

UC-NRLF



\$B 309 774

**DISCOVERIES**  
from 1492 to 1614  
AND THE  
**INDIAN NATIONS**



A

# GRAMMAR-SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE

# UNITED STATES;

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE PRESENT TIME.

BY BENSON J. LOSSING.

ILLUSTRATED BY MAPS AND ENGRAVINGS.

NEW YORK:  
SHELDON AND COMPANY,  
498 AND 500 BROADWAY.

1872.

Berkeley Public Library E178  
to EDUCATION DEPT  
Univ of California  
L861

EDUC. DEPT

In the

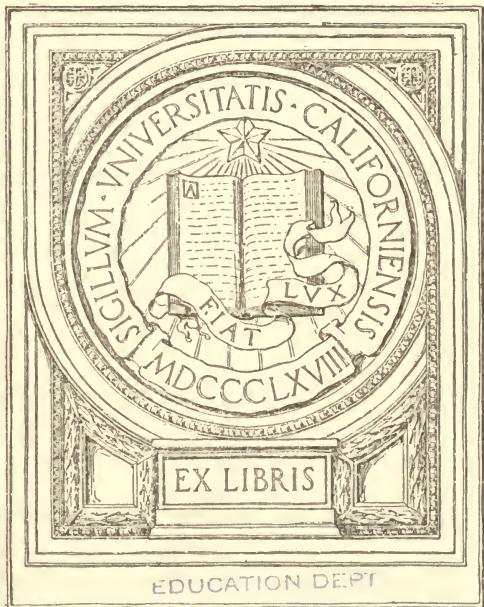
York.

GIFT OF  
Berkeley Public Library

1. D
2. R
3. A
4. T

I

LOSSI  
S  
LOSSI  
1  
LOSSI  
LOSSI  
4



pieces.

p. 172.

p. 230.

p. 254.

ITED

pages

2mo.

ATES.



# HISTORY

OF THE

# UNITED STATES.

## CHAPTER I.

### SECTION I.

1. WHEN America was discovered by Christopher Columbus, almost four hundred years ago, its inhabitants were all of a reddish brown color. Thinking he had reached a country then known as the East Indies, Columbus called these inhabitants INDIANS. By that name they are now known in every part of America.

2. The Indians in the colder parts of America were dressed in the skins of wild-beasts, and in the warmer parts they were almost naked. They got their food chiefly by hunting and fishing. They also raised a grain which was called Indian corn, and a few vegetables.

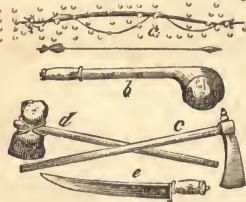
3. The Indians were divided into large and small families. The larger were known as Nations, and each spoke a different language. The smaller were known as Tribes, and the languages of these, in the same Nation, were sometimes different. They lived in huts made of poles, covered with the bark of trees or the skins of beasts, which were called wigwams.



A WIGWAM.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the inhabitants of America, when Columbus came, and the name given them? 2. Tell about their clothing and food. 3. Tell about their language and dwellings.

4. The Indians were generally warlike ; and Nations and Tribes fought each other with bows and arrows, clubs, hatchets of stone and iron called tomahawks, and knives. Like the inhabitants of Europe, these enemies would become friends, when the chief men of opposing parties would sit together around a large fire and smoke a



WAR WEAPONS.

pipe that was passed from one to the other, in token of friendship. This was called calumet, or pipe of peace.

5. The religion of the Indians was simple. They believed in a Great Good Spirit, and a Great Evil Spirit ; and anything which they could not understand or control, like the sun, moon and stars, lightning, wind, fire and water, they thought to be a kind of god. They believed that at death, each one went to a beautiful land where there was plenty of game ; and so, when a man was buried, they put into his grave bows and arrows to use in that spirit-land.



CALUMETS.

6. Their Government, also, was very simple. The head ruler or President, was called *Sachem*, and the head warrior, *Chief*. The Sachem listened to the talk in great meetings or councils, and decided what was best for all to do. The warriors followed the *Chief* wherever he might lead. These head men were chosen by the people, to lead them.

7. Such were the inhabitants of America when Columbus discovered it. They were nearly all wanderers, doing almost nothing towards raising grain and fruit. White men

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about their wars and peace-making? 5. What did they believe? 6. What can you tell me about their government? 7. What were their habits, and what will be their fate.



MEETING OF WHITE MEN AND INDIANS.

came from Europe to do so ; and ever since that time, the Indians have been going further from the sea, into the forests, and are becoming fewer every year. They will finally become extinct as a separate people.

## CHAPTER II.

## THE GREAT SAILORS OR DISCOVERERS.

## SECTION I.

## THE DISCOVERERS FROM SPAIN.



NORTHMAN.

1. CHRISTOPHER Columbus, born in Genoa, in Italy, was an eminent sailor. He made a voyage to Iceland where he heard, no doubt, of some bold seamen of the northern countries of Europe who in small vessels crossed the Atlantic Ocean to America several hundred years before.

2. At that time the countrymen of Columbus were masters of the Mediterranean Sea, and had a profitable trade with the people of that part of Asia, called India. The merchants of the western part of Europe wished to trade there too, but the Italians would not allow them to sail over the Mediterranean Sea. So they sought some other way to get there.

3. Some bold Portuguese sailed around the southern point of Africa called the Cape of Good Hope, and then across a broad ocean to India. It was a long voyage, and the merchants of Spain and Portugal desired a shorter way.



NORTHMAN'S SHIP.

QUESTIONS. — 1. What can you tell about Columbus and northern sailors? 2. What did the Italians do about trade with India? 3. What can you tell about Portuguese Navigators? What did Columbus believe?



Columbus, then in Portugal, meditated upon it. He believed the Earth to be round like an orange and not flat like a cake as everybody then believed it to be. He be-



COLUMBUS.

lieved India could be reached as well by sailing westward as by sailing eastward, and that it was not half as far to it across the Atlantic Ocean as around the Cape of Good Hope.

4. With these ideas Columbus asked for help in fitting a ship in which he might search for India. He

first ask-



ISABELLA.

ed the King of England to help him. He refused. So did the King of Portugal. Then he went to Spain on the same errand.

5. Ferdinand, the King of Spain, had a pious wife, name Isabella. She, like Columbus, was a Christian, and when he told her that one of his objects was to carry a knowl-

edge of Christianity to the heathen, she promised to help him even though she should be compelled to sell the diamonds in her crown to enable her to buy a ship for him.



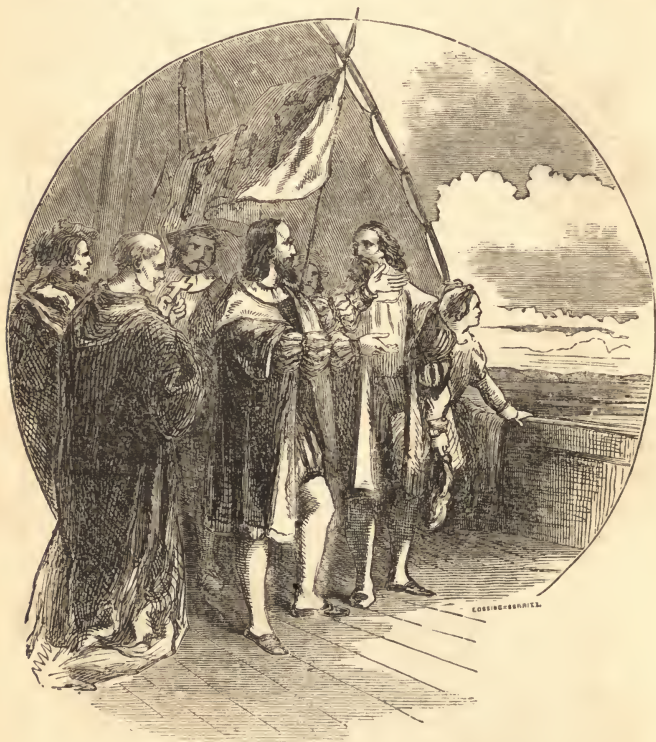
THE VESSELS OF COLUMBUS.

6. Ferdinand was

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What did Columbus do? 5. What can you tell about Columbus and Queen Isabella? 6. What did the Queen do?

willing to have Isabella help Columbus, and she fitted out two ships for him. His friends fitted out another and larger one, and the three vessels, well-manned, left the town of Palos, on the Tinto River, in Spain, on the 3d day of August, 1492.



COLUMBUS DISCOVERING LAND.

7. Week after week they sailed on westward, out of sight of land. All but Columbus grew afraid, and wanted to turn back, when, just at sunset one day in October, the air was filled with the perfume of flowers. Columbus knew

---

QUESTION.— 7. Tell about the voyage of Columbus.

that land was nigh. He watched all night, and in the morning he saw green forests, and heard birds singing.

8. The voyagers had reached the islands of the Bahama group not far from the continent. They all went ashore, where they saw men, women and children hiding among the bushes, in fear. They were copper-colored, and had never seen white men before. Thinking the island was a part of India, he called the inhabitants, INDIANS.



COLUMBUS ON SAN SALVADOR.

9. Columbus called the island on which he landed, San Salvador, the Spanish words for Holy Savior. He afterward found other islands in the neighborhood, and these were called the West Indies. When he returned to Spain, the King and Queen rewarded him with riches and honors.

10. When the news of the discovery of Columbus spread, another Italian named Amerigo Vespucci came over the Atlantic [1499] with Ojeda, one of the companions of the former. He visited the West India Islands, sailed southward, and discovered the American Continent near the mouth of the Orinoco river, in South America.

11. When Amerigo returned, he published a letter [1504] giving an account of his discov-



AMERICUS VESPUTIUS.

QUESTIONS.—8. What occurred at the end of the voyage of Columbus? 9. What did Columbus then do, and what did he receive? 10. Tell about another Italian discoverer. 11. How came America to receive its name?

eries, and the newly-found world was named AMERICA, in honor of him. Columbus was not allowed to publish an account of his discoveries, so he lost the honor of having the country called by his name.

12. Many Spanish people went to live in the West India Islands, especially in Cuba, the largest. Among them was John Ponce de Leon, who was told that on an island northwest from Cuba, was a spring, whose waters, if used, would keep him perpetually young. He sailed [1512] in search of this fountain of youth.



A SPANISH WARRIOR.

13. De Leon did not find the spring, but he discovered that portion of our country, called Florida, which was so named by that adventurer partly because he found it a land covered with flowers. Other Spaniards went to the same country afterward, under De Soto, and traveling westward, discovered the Mississippi River [1541.] Others, chiefly warriors under Fernando Cortez, had sailed to Mexico. These took possession of that country in 1521. The natives were ill-treated by these Spaniards everywhere.

## SECTION II.

### THE DISCOVERERS FROM ENGLAND AND FRANCE.

1. WHEN it was known in Europe that a new World had been found beyond the Atlantic Ocean, Kings and merchants, especially in England, Holland, Spain, France and Italy, were anxious to have some profitable connection with it.

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell about a fountain of perpetual youth? 13. What did De Leon discover? What did other Spaniards do? 1. What effect did the knowledge of the discoveries of Columbus have?



2. Henry, the King of England who refused to listen to Columbus before his first voyage, [Verse 4, page 7], was now glad to do all he could to assist John Cabot and others, who were merchants in Bristol, in sending ships across the Atlantic in search of new countries.

3. Four years and a half after Columbus made his first voyage, John Cabot prepared two ships, and with these his son Sebastian sailed. He was then a young man about twenty years of age. At first he sailed towards Greenland; then he turned southward, and in the course of a few weeks he came in sight of the rugged shores of Labrador.



SEBASTIAN CABOT.

4. Cabot did not land, but sailed southward, and discovered a large island, which he properly named NEW-FOUND-LAND. There he saw great numbers of cod-fishes, which are yet abundant in the sea in that region. He landed at several places, and then sailed to England to tell his countrymen of the new world he had found.

5. Young Cabot crossed the Atlantic Ocean the next year, and sailed all along America from the icy coasts of Labrador to the sunny shores of our Carolinas. He was the first discoverer of North America, for this voyage along the shores of the United States was made about fourteen years before John Ponce de Leon, [verse 13, p. 10], landed in Florida.

6. Sebastian was a very great sailor, and was upon the ocean nearly all his life. He sailed all along the coast of

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What did the King of England do? 3. Who sailed for America from England, and how? 4. What did Cabot discover? 5. What else did he do? 6. What other discoveries did Cabot make?

Brazil, in South America, discovered the great river La Plata, and went on its bosom in a boat four hundred miles up into the broad wilderness. He lived to be a very old man.

7. After Cabot had told of the many codfishes near Newfoundland, bold sailors went from England, Brittany, and Normandy, to catch them, and were very successful. Some of these fishermen saw the neighboring coasts of Nova Scotia, and the stories they told of the beautiful land there, got to the ears of Francis, the first French King of that name.

8. At that time there was a great sailor in France, who came from Florence. His name was John Verrazzani. The king fitted out four vessels, with plenty of men and provisions, and sent Verrazzani with them [1524] to explore the coasts of America along which Cabot had sailed.

9. Three of Verrazzani's ships were injured by a storm, and he crossed the Atlantic with only one. He first reached the coast of our North Carolina, and then he went into almost every bay from there to Newfoundland. He talked a great deal with the Indians who came out of the

woods to see him and his *big canoe*, as they called his ship. He named the whole country NEW FRANCE.



CARTIER'S SHIP.

10. Ten years afterward, another great sailor, named James Cartier, came from France [1534] to this New World. He first landed at Newfoundland. Afterward he sailed into a great gulf and the mouth of a very large river, and then returned to

France.

QUESTIONS.— 7. What did other sailors do, and what was discovered? 8. What was done in France? 9. Tell about Verrazzani's voyage. 10. What other French sailor came to America, and what did he see?

11. Cartier came back in another ship the next year, and sailed up that great river to a town which the Indians called *Hochelaga*. He named the gulf and the river, St. Lawrence. The Indian town he called Mont Real, or Royal Mountain, because there was a high mountain just behind it.

12. The St. Lawrence flows between the United States and Canada, a part of the way, and Montreal [Mont Real] is now a large city. From that place Cartier wickedly carried away the King of the Indians, whom he coaxed to go on board of his ship. He took him to France, where he died of a broken heart. This circumstance made the Indians hate the white people, and give them trouble afterward.

13. A few other French sailors came to explore America soon afterward. But the French King had his hands so full of business at home, because his people had commenced fighting each other, that he paid no more attention to fitting out ships to sail to America.

14. That Civil War, as the fighting of one part of a people against another, is called, was between Roman Catholics and Protestants, who quarrelled and fought because they could not agree about the true way to worship God.

15. There was an eminent man in France at that time, named Coligny. He was a Huguenot, as the Protestants in France were then called. As the Roman Catholics were a stronger party, he wished to find a place for his friends to live in with more peacefulness than they could in France, and he believed that America would be just the place for them.

16. So Coligny helped a good many of the Huguenots

---

QUESTIONS.—11. What did Cartier afterward do? 12. What wicked thing did he do? 13, 14. What now happened in France? 15. What can you tell about the Huguenots? 16. What did they do?

to fit out ships in which to sail to America. They came over in the Spring of 1562, or a little more than three hundred years ago. They landed in Florida near where John Ponce de Leon did when he gave the country that name. [Verse 13, p. 10].



FRENCHMAN IN 1560.

17. The Huguenots did not like the spot, and sailed northward to Carolina. But these nearly all perished. Two years afterward some more came, and lived in tents on the coast of Florida, while they were building a fort, which they named Carolina, in honor of King Charles of France.

18. The Spaniards claimed Florida as theirs, because John Ponce de Leon, a Spaniard, first saw it. Melendez, a warrior, went there [1565] with many soldiers, and laid the foundation of the city of St. Augustine. There he killed almost a thousand of the French settlers, partly because he and his men, and his king, did not believe what the Frenchmen did in religion.

19. When these events were known in France, a brave soldier, named De Gourges, sailed to America with many others, and killed nearly all of the Spaniards. So the white people were in Florida no more. That first white settlement in Eastern North America was broken up, and the Indians had the whole country to themselves again, for a long time.



FRENCH SOLDIER IN FLORIDA.

20. Some of the great English sailors supposed they could get to India by going northwest, not dreaming that

---

QUESTIONS.—17. What happened to them? 18. What did the Spaniards do? 19. What did French soldiers do? 20. What can you tell about searches for a north-west passage to India?



they would find the ocean in that direction continually covered with ice. So, many years after Cabot discovered North America, Martin Frobisher and others crossed the Atlantic to find a northwest passage, and to seek gold in the rough soil of Labrador. They found neither, were discouraged, and went no more.

21. When that remarkable woman, Elizabeth, was the Queen of England, she and her chief men heard of the beautiful region of our North and South Carolina, which received the name from the French fort Carolina. Some of the Huguenots in Florida, who escaped the massacre by the Spaniards, went to sea in a boat. They were picked up and carried to England, and it was they who told the queen about that fine country.

22. Elizabeth was delighted, and recommended her navigators to take people to that warmer climate to till the soil, rather than to Labrador in search of gold which they were not likely to find. So it was that the attention of the English was first turned toward the more Southern and delightful portions of the coasts of North America.

23. At that time there was a worthy and wealthy young Englishman, named Walter Raleigh, and a favorite of Queen Elizabeth. His step-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, was one of the most eminent of the English navigators, at that time, and had thought of planting a colony.

24. Gilbert proposed an expedition for the purpose, to



WALTER RALEIGH.

---

QUESTIONS.—21, 22. How came the attention of the English to be called to the Carolina coasts? 23. What can you tell about two eminent Englishmen?

Raleigh. The Queen gave them permission to undertake it: and early in the year 1579, they both started for America. Storms and Spanish enemies soon drove them back, and they gave up the voyage.

25. Four years afterward Gilbert started again, but did not reach Carolina. He was at Newfoundland awhile, and then started for home. A dreadful storm arose, which beat so heavily upon the ship he was in, that at midnight it went to the bottom of the sea with Gilbert and all on board.



RALEIGH'S SHIP.

26. Raleigh was much grieved at the loss of his step-brother. But he was a man of courage. He had much wealth left, so he fitted out two more ships to carry people to America. They were commanded by two good sailors, named Amidas and Barlow.



ENGLISH GENTLEMAN,  
1580.

27. It was in the hot month of July, [1584] when Raleigh's ships reached the Carolina coast. The people in them landed on an island which the Indians called Roanoke. They traded with the Indians for several weeks, and then returned to England. Two Indian chiefs who wished to see the world went to England with them.

28. Queen Elizabeth and Raleigh were delighted with the stories which Amidas and Barlow told them, about the beautiful Roanoke and the main land near by. The Queen called the whole country *Virginia*. It was the same region which

---

QUESTIONS.—24. What did Raleigh and Gilbert do? 25. What happened to Gilbert afterward? 26. What did Raleigh then do? 27. What can you tell about the English at Roanoke? 28. How came the region of Virginia to be called by that name?

Verrazzani had named *New France* [verse 9, page 12] sixty years before.

29. Queen Elizabeth granted the use of the whole country to Raleigh, who prepared to send settlers there with a prospect of making a large fortune for himself, for he was to share in all the gold they might find. So, in the Spring of the following year [1585] he sent Sir Richard Grenville, with seven ships to carry settlers to Roanoke Island.

30. Grenville and his party landed in June, and the natives were glad to see the two chiefs back again, who had returned with this expedition. These natives differed from the more Northerly Indians. They lived in houses, and had fine gardens, and fields of maize or Indian corn, and tobacco. Some of the latter was sent to England; and it is said that Raleigh was the first man who smoked it, in Europe.

31. The Indians treated the English well, but were used so badly in turn that they determined to kill them all. At this time Grenville went back to England with the ships, and the angry Indians prepared to murder all the settlers.

32. Sir Francis Drake soon afterward arrived, [1586] in a large ship. He was one of the greatest war-sailors England ever had, and was the first Englishman who sailed around the world. The settlers went on board his ship and returned to England. Others were landed there afterward, but these were all murdered by the offended Indians.

33. Raleigh afterward sent over quite a large number of men and women to form a colony. John White was appointed their Governor. His daughter, and her husband named Dare, accompanied the expedition. She gave birth

---

QUESTIONS.—29. What did the Queen and Raleigh do? 30. What can you tell about the Indians? What can you say about tobacco? 31. How did the Indians behave? 32. Who came to Roanoke, and what happened to the settlers? 33. What can you tell about Virginia Dare?

to a daughter on Roanoke Island, the first English child born in America. She was named Virginia.

34. Governor White went back to England on business, and when he returned to Roanoke, his daughter and little Virginia Dare, with all the rest of the settlers, had disappeared, and were never heard of afterward. It was supposed that they were carried off into the great forests on the main land, and there lived with the Indians.

35. Raleigh was now discouraged. His money was nearly all spent, and he gave up making attempts to establish a colony in America. He afterward lost favor with King James, Elizabeth's successor to the throne, and was imprisoned on a false charge of treason, and finally beheaded. He wrote a History of the World, while he was in prison.

36. In the year 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold, an English navigator, crossed the Atlantic Ocean, and explored the coast from the site of Boston, in Massachusetts, to that of Newport, in Rhode Island. Seeing great numbers of cod-fishes near a low sandy point, he called it Cape Cod.

37. Other English sailors soon afterward visited what is now the New England Coast. Two of them explored the coast of Maine. One of them (Captain Weymouth), carried off some Indians in his ship, and caused great hatred of the white people among the natives of that region.

38. It was now more than a hundred years since Columbus revealed the New World to Europe, and yet there was not a settlement of white people in all this broad land. One was made soon afterward, [1608] on the river St. Lawrence, by some French people, who named the place Quebec. They came with Samuel Champlain, a great French

---

QUESTIONS.—34. What happened to her and the settlement? 35. What can you tell about Raleigh? 36. What can you tell me of another great English sailor? 37. And what of others? 38. What can you tell about settlements in America?



sailor, who discovered the lake of that name, in the northern part of the State of New York.

39. A little earlier, [1605] some French people had attempted to settle in Nova Scotia, and they named that country Acadie. They were compelled to leave it, but the settlement at Quebec remained. The latter is the oldest permanent settlement of the French in North America.

40. The English having failed in their attempts to make settlements in America, several London merchants concluded to employ some navigator to make another effort to find a northwest passage to India. They employed a famous man named Henry Hudson. He sailed twice in that direction, but like others before him, he could not get through the ice, so the London merchants gave it up.

41. Hudson was an ambitious man. He was very anxious to be the first sailor who should reach India by a northern route. At that time there were a number of merchants in Holland who had joined together to trade in India. They were called the Dutch East India Company.

42. Hudson went to Amsterdam to see the managers of that Company. He told them



HALF-MOON.

that he firmly believed that he could reach India by going around the north of Europe, instead of the north of America. They liked the idea, and fitted out a small vessel, called the *Half-moon*, for him to sail in. He went into the Arctic Ocean,

where he found as much ice as in the other direction. He did not like to return without doing something great ; so he sailed westward, after passing Iceland, and steered across the Atlantic.

---

QUESTIONS.—39. What can you tell about French settlements ? 40. What did London merchants do ? 41. What can you tell about Henry Hudson and the Dutch ? 42. What did Hudson do ?

43. Hudson first saw America on the coast of Maine. He then sailed southward to the Capes of Virginia, and explored the bays and rivers northward until he entered the waters which now form the harbor of New York.

44. Hudson saw a great river rolling down from among the blue hills at the north, and he sailed up that stream more than one hundred and sixty miles to the site of the present town of Waterford. He had many adventures with the Indians, who had never before seen a white man, nor such a "big canoe" as they called his ship. That stream now bears the name of Hudson's river.



HENRY HUDSON.

45. When Hudson returned to Europe, and told of the immense and beautiful country which he had discovered, the people of Holland, who were great traders, began at once to send ships to Hudson's river to traffic with the Indians. That matter we will consider presently.

46. Hudson tried once again to find a north-west passage. In so doing, he discovered the bay in the far north which bears his name. There he lost his life. Some of his sailors becoming discontented, bound Hudson and his son with strong ropes, and putting them in a little boat, with seven sick companions, they sailed off with the ship and left them. Hudson and his companions all perished with cold or hunger, on that icy sea.

---

QUESTIONS.—43. What were Hudson's first discoveries? 44. What can you tell about Hudson's greatest discovery? 45. What effect did his discoveries have? 46. What happened to him afterward?

## CHAPTER III.

### SECTION I.

#### THE ADVENTURERS OR SETTLERS.

1. A Settlement and a Colony are different things. A settlement is the first step toward founding a colony. A settlement may last only a short time. It may be broken up by enemies or sickness. A colony is a settlement made permanent, out of which may grow a province or a nation.

2. We will first consider the attempts to found colonies by settlers in several parts of what is now the region of America called the United States, and observe how those settlers became Planters and formed colonies. It took some of the settlements ten years, and some twenty years, to become colonies, while one of them was about sixty years in so doing. We will first consider the

#### ADVENTURERS IN VIRGINIA.

3. Because of the discoveries of their Great Sailors, the English claimed a right to settle anywhere in America between the mouth of the Cape Fear river in North Carolina, and the town of Halifax in Nova Scotia. They allowed the Spaniards to have all the country south of that, and the Frenchmen all north of it.

4. Queen Elizabeth, we have noticed, [verse 28, page 16] gave the name of VIRGINIA to that whole territory. When she died, a man named James Stuart, who was a king

---

QUESTIONS.—1. Can you explain the difference between a settlement and a colony? 2. What have you to say about founding colonies? and how long did it take some settlements to become colonies? 3. What can you tell about the claims of the English? 4. What can you say of a new King of England?

of Scotland, became King of England, and a very mean, and unlovely man he was. But he did some good things.

5. That vast country in America claimed by the English was divided into North and South Virginia. Quite a number of men in the town of Plymouth, England, joined together for the purpose of making settlements in North Virginia. The King gave them a written agreement, in which he promised to let them have the use of all that country if they would agree to do so and so. They were called the *Plymouth* or *North Virginia Company*.

6. A number of men in London joined together in the same way, to settle in South Virginia. The king gave them a similar paper, and they made a similar agreement with the king. They were called the *London* or *South Virginia Company*. These papers given by the king were called *Charters*, which means written agreements.

7. The Plymouth Company first tried to make settlements in their part of America, but failed. The London Company soon afterward collected more than a hundred Adventurers, fitted out three good ships for them to sail in, and then sent a navigator, named Newport, to conduct them to the island of Roanoke, where Sir Walter Raleigh tried to make a settlement [verse 29, page 17], more than twenty years before. This was at the close of the year 1606.

8. A heavy storm drove the ship of the Adventurers away to the northward, and they entered the mouth of a great river, after passing two capes at the entrance to Chesapeake Bay. To please the king, they named the great river James, and the two capes Charles and Henry, after his two sons.

---

QUESTIONS.—5. How was America divided by the English? 6. What can you tell of two Companies in England? 7. What did these Companies do? 8. What happened to the Adventurers in Newport's ships?



9. The Adventurers sailed more than fifty miles up that river, and landed on a sort of island. Everything appeared beautiful, for it was in warm April weather, [1607] and the earth and trees were covered with flowers and blossoms. There they commenced building a village, which they called Jamestown.

10. Captain John Smith, a great soldier, was one of the Adventurers. He had been in many fights with the Turks in eastern Europe, and had done wonderful things there. Many of the Adventurers were rather bad characters, and they became jealous of Captain Smith, for they knew he was smarter and better than they.



JOHN SMITH.

11. Smith was accused of wrong intentions during the voyage, and was put in prison on board the ship. When the Adventurers landed, they proceeded, according to King James's orders, to open a sealed box, which he had given them. Then it was found that the king had appointed Captain Smith to be one of the governors of the settlement. Greatly fearing the king's displeasure, they set him at liberty, and for many years Captain Smith was the most useful man among the settlers.

12. Newport sailed for England in June, 1607, for more adventurers and provisions. Soon after he left, the provisions of the settlers became scarce, and the poisonous vapors which arose from the swamps near by, made a great many sick. Before the close of summer, full one half of the Adventurers died, and were buried in the ground at Jamestown.

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What did the Adventurers do? 10. What can you say of John Smith and his companions? 11. What had been done to Captain Smith? 12. What happened to the settlers?

13. Every one now began to think of death and starvation, for the Indians had not received them very kindly, and would not bring them food. The man whom the Adventurers had chosen to be their chief ruler, was a very bad one, and it was not long before they asked Captain Smith to take his place.

14. Smith soon made the Indians respect him, and bring food for his companions. He now resolved to know more of the country he was in. He had already been up the James River to the Falls at Richmond, and had seen a large stream coming in from the north, just above Jamestown. With a few companions he went up that stream, which the Indians called Chickahominy. While away from his boat, in the woods, some of the Indians, who had been watching the white people, sprang forward and made Captain Smith a prisoner.



POCAHONTAS.

15. The great emperor of the Indians was called Powhatan. Captain Smith was taken from one Indian village to another, so that the women and children might see him. Then he was conducted to the dwelling of the emperor on the York river. He was kindly treated ; but when the great men around Powhatan had talked the matter all over, they concluded to kill him.

16. A huge stone was placed before Powhatan, on which the head of Captain Smith was laid. His hands were tied behind him, and he could not stir. Then two strong Indians raised each a heavy club to kill him, and there appeared no help for him.

---

QUESTIONS.—13. What were the troubles of the settlers? 14. What did Smith do? What happened to him? 15. What did the Indians do with Smith? 16. What occurred before Powhatan?

17. Powhatan had a beautiful daughter, ten or twelve years old, named Pocahontas. She sat by the side of her father, who loved her very much. She was a tender-hearted girl, and pitied Captain Smith. Just as the Indians raised their clubs to kill him, she leaped from her seat, clasped the head of the captive in her arms, and begged her father to spare his life. Pocahontas was like an angel of deliverance, for Powhatan not only gave Smith his life, but sent a guard of twelve men to conduct him back to his friends at Jamestown.

18. During his captivity Smith learned much that was useful to him, about the Indians and their country. But he was grieved to find everything in confusion at Jamestown, and only forty of his companions alive. These were just preparing to leave, but he caused them to remain, and by his own exertions he procured food enough from the Indians, for them all.

19. Newport arrived with more adventurers and provisions, the following spring [1608]. Then Smith started, in an open boat, to explore the Chesapeake Bay. He visited every bay and river along its coasts ; and, on foot, he went up into the wilderness as far as the country of the Five Nations in the southern part of New York.

20. Considering all things, that voyage of Captain Smith and his companions, was one of the most wonderful of which we have any account. In that open boat they travelled about three thousand miles, or the extent of a voyage across the Atlantic ocean from New York to London. Smith made a map of the country he discovered.

21. A very pleasant thing was seen at Jamestown not long after Captain Smith's return. It was the arrival of

---

QUESTIONS.—17. How was Smith's life saved? 18. What can you tell about Smith's return? What did he do? 19. What can you tell about his exploring voyage? 20. What more about that voyage? 21. What pleasant thing now happened?

some more adventurers from England, who brought with them two women. They were the first who came from Europe to America. Others came afterward, as we shall notice presently, to be wives for the settlers. Many of the men were unworthy of such good companions, for they were lazy and vicious. They would not raise grain for food, but looked for gold, or were idle day after day.

22. Smith coaxed the Indians to give the white people food, or they would have all starved. Finally, when he went to England [1609], on account of being badly hurt, the Indians not only refused to let the white people have food, and allowed what was called "the starving time" among the settlers, but laid a plan to kill them all. The good and beautiful Pocahontas was again an active friend of the English. She went to Jamestown, told the Adventurers what the Indians thought of doing, and so caused them to prepare to defend themselves.

23. The Indians did not attack the people at Jamestown. But food was so scarce that they determined to leave and join the English fishermen at Newfoundland [verse 4, page 11]. They went in vessels to the mouth of the James River, where they met other adventurers in ships, with food, and returned to Jamestown. After awhile, an English sailor, named Argall, who was a sort of sea-robber, came there [1612], coaxed Pocahontas on board of his ship, and kept her a prisoner for a long time. Her father was greatly grieved. But the robber would not let her go until her father sent plenty of food to the half-starving Adventurers.

24. And now another pleasant thing occurred. While Pocahontas was on Argall's ship, a young Englishman named John Rolfe, fell in love with her. She became a

---

QUESTIONS.—22. What can you say about the men in Virginia?  
22. What more can you tell of the goodness of Pocahontas? 23.  
What can you tell about Argall and Pocahontas? 24. What other  
pleasant thing now happened?



Christian, was baptized, and married Rolfe. This made her father a good friend of the English as long as he lived.

25. Pocahontas went to England with her husband not long after their marriage, where she was welcomed by



MARRIAGE OF POCAHONTAS.

Captain Smith, and kindly treated by the King as an Indian princess. Then her portrait, printed on page 24, was painted. Just as she and her husband were about to return to America, she died of small-pox.

26. After this, the Indians in Virginia were friendly. Many other adventurers came over the sea. These were mostly good and industrious people, who tilled the land, and did not spend their time foolishly in digging for gold. Then the settlers had plenty of food.

27. Other settlements were made, and very soon the English in Virginia became so strong that they did not fear the Indians, and those who came to stay a little while, and then return to England, resolved to stay as long as they lived. In the year 1619, they met together at Jamestown to make laws, and formed the first representative assembly in America. Then the Virginia *settlement* became a *colony*.

---

## SECTION II.

### ADVENTURERS IN NEW YORK.

1. When Henry Hudson let the Dutch people, who lived in Holland, know about the beautiful land he had found in the New World [verse 45, page 20], they sent ships with people there to trade with the Indians, who caught bears, beavers, otters, and other fur-bearing animals. Among other ships, the *Half-moon*, Hudson's exploring vessel, was sent for that purpose. That was in the year 1609.

2. One of the greatest of the Dutch sailors who came to America at that time was Adrian Block. He brought several adventurers with him, and landed on the lower end of the island which the Indians called Manhattan. It was bought from the Indians for twenty-five dollars; and there the city of New York now stands.

3. Block's ship took fire and was destroyed, just at the

---

QUESTIONS.—26. What can you say about other Adventurers?  
27. What did the settlers now do? 1. What did the Dutch people do? 2. What can you tell about a great Dutch sailor? 3. What happened to the Dutch Adventurers? and what did they do?

commencement of a cold winter, in 1613. The Adventurers built themselves huts to sleep in, and worked hard every day all winter, in building a new ship. It was completed in the spring, and then they explored the coast from New York to Halifax. That was the first ship ever built in what is now the United States, and was named the *Unrest*.

4. Many other Adventurers came soon afterward, and some went up Hudson's river as far as the spot where Albany now stands. In that neighborhood, and on the lower part of Manhattan island, a fort and trading-houses were built soon afterward. The whole country which the English called North Virginia, the Dutch now named NEW NETHERLAND.

5. A few years later, [1621], some Holland merchants formed the Dutch West India Company, and the rulers of their land gave them the privilege of making settlements anywhere in America, and in some parts of southern Africa.

6. Although the Dutch were getting rich fast by trading with the Indians for furs, it was now thought best to have some families come over, clear the land, raise grain, build houses, and thus commence a colony.

7. It was in the spring of 1623, when thirty families, mostly French people who had lived in Holland a long time, came to Manhattan. Quite a number of them went up Hudson's river, and settled at Albany. Others remained on Manhattan, and some went across the East river, where Brooklyn and Williamsburg now are, and settled.

8. At about this time, several log houses were built at the lower end of Manhattan island, and a permanent settlement was formed in New Netherland. With these dwellings and people, and those at Albany and at Brooklyn, a

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What did other Adventurers do? 5. What can you tell of some Holland merchants? 6. What was thought best? 7. Who came to Manhattan? and where did they settle? 8. How was a colony formed?

colony was formed, and became prosperous. We shall observe presently, how New Netherland afterward came to be called New York.

---

### SECTION III.

#### ADVENTURERS IN MASSACHUSETTS.

1. We have noticed [verse 5, page 22], how the Plymouth Company was formed. They sent a navigator, named Pring, in 1606, to prepare the way for settlements in North Virginia. The next spring, Sir George Popham (who was one of the company), and a hundred Adventurers, came over to settle. Many did not like the country, and more than half of them went back in the same ship. Those who remained suffered so much the next winter, that they also went back to England.

2. Eight years afterward [1615], the famous Captain John Smith, [verse 10, page 23], who helped to settle Virginia, came over with two vessels, and explored the American coast from Cape Cod to the Penobscot river. He made a good map of the country, showed it to the king's eldest son, Charles, and by his permission, he named the whole region east of Hudson's river, NEW ENGLAND.

3. Captain Smith was a just man, but his comrades were not always so. The commander of one of his ships (Hunt) carried off twenty-seven Indians, and sold them for slaves in Spain. This made the Indians in New England very hostile toward all white people.

4. It was not until the year 1620 that a permanent settlement was formed in New England. The king, that year,

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What did the Plymouth Company do? What can you tell of settlers who came to America? 2. What did Captain Smith do? 3. What did Smith's companions do? 4. When was New England first settled?



gave the Plymouth Company a new charter, and they prepared to make settlements in their own way, and only for the sake of making money. But this mere worldly operation was not permitted.

5. Instead of adventurers whose chief desire was to make money, others, who sought for a place where they might worship God as they pleased, were allowed to become the permanent settlers of that portion of New England known as Massachusetts. Let us see who these people were, and how it came about.

6. Nearly a hundred years before, King Henry the Eighth of England, who was a member of the Roman Catholic Church, had quarreled with the Pope of Rome, who was the head of that church. Henry put himself at the head of the church [1534], in England. Parliament, which is the English Congress, agreed to the change, and the Church of England finally became an opposer of the Church of Rome.

7. The people thought they would now have more liberty in religion, under King Henry than under the Pope, but they were mistaken. Instead of ministers of the gospel being allowed to preach as they pleased, and the people to worship God as they pleased, they were compelled to do just as King Henry told them to do. And they were discontented.

8. Henry's son Edward became King [1547], while he was yet a boy. He was advised to give the people more freedom in their way of worshipping their Maker. He did so, to some extent, and the people rejoiced. But there seemed to be much to complain of in both the English and Roman Catholic Churches; and many people not only thought that one was no better than the other, but boldly

---

QUESTIONS.—5. By whom? 6. What can you tell about a King of England, and the Pope? 7. What did the people hope, and how were they disappointed? 8. What was done by King Edward?

said so. These professed to lead simple and pure lives, and were called, in derision, PURITANS.



A PURITAN.

9. The Puritans increased in numbers for many years, but because they would not obey the monarch of England rather than their own consciences, in the worship of God, they were made to suffer much. When James Stuart [verse 4, page 21], who was a Protestant (as those who opposed the Church of Rome were called), became King of England [1603], they expected a happier time, but were disappointed.

10. Under King James, the Puritans suffered as much as they did under Mary and Elizabeth, the daughters of Henry the Eighth, who were Queens. They endured trouble as long as they could, and then many of them fled to Holland and other places in Europe. A large congregation, whose minister was John Robinson, hearing that the Dutch, in Holland, allowed everybody to worship God as they pleased, went there, and lived happily for some time.

11. But the Dutch people were so different from the English people, that the Puritans concluded to go to America, about which they had heard a great deal in Holland. Here they hoped to be as free as the air they would breathe, or as the Indians in the woods. So they got permission of the Plymouth Company to settle somewhere in North Virginia, and the king promised to let them alone in their new home.

12. The Puritans, who felt that they were only PILGRIMS in this world, had very little money. So they formed a partnership with some London merchants, who fitted out

---

QUESTIONS.—9, 10. What more can you tell about the Puritans?

11. What did they do? 12. What can you tell about a partnership formed by the Puritans?

two ships to convey them to America. The Puritans and the merchants were to share in all money that might be made by a settlement.

13. The Pilgrims, as they called themselves—"the youngest and best"—left Delft-Haven, in Holland, in two ships, in the summer of 1620, and went to England. They soon sailed for America, but the courage of some of them failed, and both ships went back to Plymouth.

14. Only one hundred and one men, women and children, finally sailed for America in one of the vessels, which they called by the beautiful name of *May-Flower*, a pretty blossom that grows in England. They were on the ocean sixty-three days, and did not reach America until cold December, when everything was covered with snow.



MAY-FLOWER.

15. In the cabin of the *May-flower* the *Pilgrim Fathers*, as they are called, signed an agreement for the government of their little colony when they should settle in America. This was the first written constitution of government, ever made. They chose John Carver to be governor; and all solemnly promised to be obedient to the laws that might be made under that constitution.

16. The *May-Flower* was anchored in a fine bay, on the coast of Massachusetts, in sight of Cape Cod. [See verse 36, page 18]. Some of the boldest of the men went in a little boat to find a good landing-place. Among them was Captain Miles Standish, a small man, but a great soldier. They did not see any Indians, because a terrible

---

QUESTIONS.—13. Tell about the Pilgrims leaving Holland. 14, 15. Give an account of their voyage to America? 16. What can you tell about the landing of the Pilgrims?

pestilence had killed almost every one of them in that neighborhood. They soon found a good place. Then all the people on board the *May-Flower* landed, and they called the place New Plymouth.

17. The winter was cold, the snow was very deep, and the Pilgrim Adventurers suffered very much. Before the flowers bloomed, in the spring, the governor and his wife, and about one half of the Adventurers, died. The rest remained, cleared the ground, raised grain, and were joined by other Puritans from England. The settlement became a permanent one, and so the colony of Massachusetts was founded.

---

## SECTION IV.

### ADVENTURERS IN NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. Two years after the Pilgrims came to America, John Mason, who was the Secretary of the Plymouth Colony, and Sir Fernando Gorges, both wealthy gentlemen, obtained permission to make settlements in that more northerly region, now known as the State of New Hampshire, which they then named Maine.

2. Soon afterward, parties of fishermen built log houses near the present Portsmouth and Dover. In 1629, a minister of the gospel, named Wheelwright, bought of the Indians the whole country between the Merrimac and Piscataqua rivers, and commenced a settlement where Exeter now is. Fishermen commenced settlements, also, along the coast of Maine, and at several places log huts were built.

3. The most of these settlements became permanent. Mr. Mason, who had been governor of Portsmouth, in Hamp-

---

QUESTIONS.—17. What can you tell of the Pilgrims in America?  
1. Who were permitted to settle in New Hampshire? 2. What can you tell of settlements in that region? 3. What was done in 1641?



shire county, England, named the whole region New Hampshire. The people were too much scattered to get together to make laws, so, in 1641, they agreed to become a part of the colony of Massachusetts.

4. Forty years afterward, when the settlers became numerous, they met and made laws, chose a governor, and formed the colony of New Hampshire.

---

## SECTION V.

### ADVENTURERS IN MARYLAND.

1. We have noticed that King James caused the Puritans to suffer. He hated the Roman Catholics quite as much, and persecuted them in many ways. But there was one of the Catholics, an Irishman named George Calvert, that King James liked, because in all things he did as the King wished him to do. He made him Secretary of State, and also made him a nobleman, with the title of Lord Baltimore.

2. Calvert got the King's permission [1622], to make a settlement for Roman Catholics in America. He went first to Newfoundland, but the soil was so sandy, and the French settlers were so near, that he left, and sailed for Virginia in 1628. The Church of England people there would not allow him to settle among them; and he well knew that the Puritans would not allow him to live in New England.

3. Lord Baltimore was in a quandary. He had heard that when America was divided into North and South Virginia, a space of two hundred miles was left between

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about a colony? 1, 2. What can you tell about King James and George Calvert? 3. What can you say of Lord Baltimore?

them, so that the Plymouth and London Companies should have no cause for dispute about the line that separated their territories. Baltimore resolved to settle on this strip which nobody owned.



CECIL, SECOND LORD BALTIMORE.

4. While Lord Baltimore was looking for a place to settle in, King James died [1625], and his son Charles became monarch of England. Charles gave Baltimore a charter, but about that time [1632], the Irish nobleman died. His brother, Cecil Calvert, then became Lord Baltimore. The first company of Roman Catholic settlers who came to the territory of the United States, arrived in 1634. Their governor was Leonard Calvert, Lord Baltimore's brother. The country was named Maryland, in compliment to the wife of King Charles, whose name was Henrietta Maria or Mary.

5. These Adventurers sailed up the Potomac river as far as Mount Vernon, where Washington afterward lived, but they did not find a good place to commence a settlement. So they sailed down the river, and on the shores of Chesapeake Bay they landed, built log houses, and called the place St. Mary. They bought the land from the Indians, and their honesty was always remembered by those children of the forest.

6. Calvert called a meeting of the people to make laws. Within five years after these Adventurers sailed up the Potomac, the settlement had much increased, for many more Roman Catholics had crossed the Atlantic. The first Legislature—a number of men chosen by the people to make

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What did Lord Baltimore do? What can you tell of the region named Maryland and its settlement? 5. What did the first Adventurers do? 6. How did the settlement grow to a colony?

laws—met at St. Mary in 1639, and then the colony of Maryland was formed.

---

## SECTION VI.

### ADVENTURERS IN CONNECTICUT.

1. The river that rises in Canada and empties into Long Island Sound, was called by the Indians Quon-eh-ta-cut, which means, in their language, The Long River. It was discovered in the spring of 1613, by Block; that great Dutch sailor who, as we have seen [verse 3, page 28], built a ship where New York now stands.

2. Dutch traders went up that river soon afterwards; and, near where Hartford now stands, they built a fort and trading-house. The white people spelled the name of the river as it sounded to them—Connecticut. The Puritans of New Plymouth having heard of the beautiful country through which it flowed, were very anxious to make a settlement there, before the Dutch should do so, and they sought permission to settle in that fairer land.

3. The Plymouth Company claimed this region. So they gave permission to several English gentlemen to make settlements there. Quite a number of adventurers went up the Connecticut river in the autumn of 1633, in a sloop commanded by Captain Holmes. The Dutch well knew what they came for, and declared that they should not pass their fort. Captain Holmes declared that he would, and so he did. The Dutch grumbled about it, and the next year sent seventy men to drive the Puritans away, but they could not do it.

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the Connecticut river?  
2. What did the Dutch and Puritans do? 3. What can you tell of the troubles between the Dutch and English?

4. Two years after this, a company of men, women, and children traveled through the woods from Plymouth to the Connecticut river. The following winter was very cold. Many of their cattle died, and food became so scarce that the people were compelled to eat acorns that fell from the oak trees. Some left in the spring, but many staid; and where the city of Hartford now stands, they built a small meeting-house of logs—the first ever erected in Connecticut.



FIRST MEETING HOUSE.

5. In the summer of 1636, a very excellent minister of the Gospel, named Thomas Hooker, who lived near Boston, traveled through the wilderness to Hartford, with several families, consisting of about one hundred people. These Adventurers drove cows with them, and lived upon their milk and the berries which they found on their way.

6. It was on the fourth of July when they reached Hartford, and the next Sunday they all assembled in that little first meeting-house, where Mr. Hooker preached to them. Some of the families settled there, and others went up the valley and founded Springfield and other places.

7. Just as these Adventurers were preparing to establish a permanent colony, they were called upon to endure great trouble. There was a tribe of Indians called Pequods, who lived east of the Connecticut river. They determined to kill all the white people, and tried to get the Narraganset Indians, further eastward, to join them. This Roger Williams (who, as we shall notice presently, had settled among the Narragansets) prevented.

8. The Pequods, from time to time, murdered several white people. The Adventurers in the Connecticut valley,

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell of settlers from Plymouth? 5. What can you tell of other settlers from near Boston? 6. What did the new settlers do? 7. What trouble appeared? 8. What did the Indians do?



seeing no chance for peace with them, resolved to kill them all. The settlers in Massachusetts agreed to help them, and they got the Narraganset Indians to join them.

9. In May, 1637, full five hundred warriors, white people and Indians, were marching toward the country of the Pequods, whose great sachem and chief, [verse 6, page 4], Sassacus, felt no fear. He had a strong fort a few miles from the present New London, and could call around him almost two thousand warriors. But Sassacus felt stronger than he really was.

10. Captain Mason, a famous Indian fighter, commanded the army that marched against Sassacus. One morning, before daylight, he surrounded the Indian fort, set it on fire, and, when the sun rose, more than six hundred men, women, and children had perished in the flames, or by the sword and spear. Only seven escaped.

11. Sassacus was amazed; and when he heard that other soldiers were coming from Massachusetts, he fled westward with his remaining warriors, to a great swamp near Fairfield. There a severe battle was fought, and the Indians were nearly all slain. Sassacus again fled, and took refuge with the Mohawks, one of the Six Nations of Indians then in the present State of New York, where he was murdered. The whole territory of the Pequods was desolated, and the tribe was destroyed.

12. The white people who followed the Pequods in their flight, discovered the beautiful country along Long Island Sound. Adventurers soon came from Massachusetts to examine it. In the autumn they built a log hut on a little stream near a bay, and spent the winter there.

13. The next spring the Adventurers were joined by

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What preparations for war were made? 10. What can you tell of an attack upon the Indians? 11. What about Sassacus and his warriors? 12. What did the white people discover? And what did they do? 13. What can you tell about New Haven?

John Davenport and others. Davenport was a Gospel minister, and preached his first sermon to the people under a large oak tree. They bought the land of the Indians, made a covenant, or written bargain, by which they agreed to be governed, and called their settlement NEW HAVEN.

14. In the winter of 1639, the settlers in the Connecticut valley met and formed a covenant, and chose a governor. They called their settlement the CONNECTICUT COLONY. Although these and the New Haven settlements were not united under one government until twenty-six years afterward, the foundations of the colony of Connecticut were laid in these covenants made by the Adventurers in each, in 1639.

---

## SECTION VII.

### ADVENTURERS IN RHODE ISLAND.

1. William Blackstone, the first white man who lived where Boston now stands, was also the first one who lived in the State of Rhode Island. Although he was the first settler there, he was not the founder of the colony.

2. There was a minister of the Gospel in Massachusetts, named Roger Williams. The Puritans there wanted everybody to believe and act as they did. Williams would not, and so they told him he must leave their settlement, or they would put him in prison.

3. Williams went off [1636] among the tribe of Indians called Narragansets, and their great sachem, Canonicus, gave him some land at the head of Narraganset Bay. Williams and a few men, formed a settlement there; and because of the goodness of God in preserving their lives in the

---

QUESTIONS.—14. How was the Connecticut colony formed? 1. Who was the first white man in Rhode Island? 2. What can you tell of Roger Williams? 3. What can you tell about the settling of Providence?

wilderness, he called the place Providence. It is now the chief city in Rhode Island.

4. Williams gave permission to every one to worship God as he pleased. Many in Massachusetts, when they heard of this freedom, went to Providence, and the settlement grew quite fast. The great Indian sachem respected Williams, and matters went on smoothly.

5. In 1639, some people who came from Boston, and joined Williams, were presented by Miantonomoh, another Narraganset sachem, with the beautiful island of Aquiday, now called Rhode Island. They settled at the north end of it, and founded Portsmouth. Others, who came afterward, settled near the south end and founded Newport. Each of these settlements formed a league, or covenant, for their government.

6. Roger Williams went to England to get a charter from the king in 1643. But the Parliament, or Legislature, of England, was then at war with the king, and had the power in their hands. So the next spring, Parliament gave him a charter, and all of the settlements were united into one colony, with the name of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations.

---

## SECTION VIII.

### ADVENTURERS IN DELAWARE, NEW JERSEY, AND PENNSYLVANIA.

1. The settlements in New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, were so connected that it is proper to include them all in one story. We will begin with

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you say of freedom at Providence? 5. What can you tell of the settling of Rhode Island? 6. How was a charter for it obtained? 1, 2. Who first settled in Delaware?

## D E L A W A R E .

2. Some Dutch Adventurers came over in two ships, commanded by Peter Heyes, in 1631, and landed where the village of Lewiston, in Delaware, now is. The Indians murdered the whole of them.

3. At that time, the King of Sweden, in the North of Europe, named Gustavus Vasa, had formed a plan for some of his people to establish a colony in America. That king was killed in battle, and he left his little daughter Christina, who was only six years of age, to be queen. She was too young to act as queen, so some wise men managed affairs until she became a woman.

4. Some people of Sweden joined, and formed the Swedish West India Company. The men who managed the affairs of the kingdom gave them a charter, in the name of the young queen, and, in 1638, quite a number of Adventurers landed on the shores of the Delaware river. They built a church and fort, bought a large tract of land of the Indians, and named the territory NEW SWEDEN.

5. The Dutch claimed all of that land as a part of New Netherland, and told the Swedes they must leave it. The Swedes refused to go, and they and the Dutch quarreled about it for more than a dozen years. The Dutch governor of New Netherland finally sent soldiers there, to drive off the Swedes. The Swedes agreed to be governed by the Dutch, if they would let them stay and so, in the year 1655, New Sweden was no more.

## N E W J E R S E Y .

6. New Jersey was a part of New Netherland, and some Danish traders settled first at Bergen, and then on the

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell of the King of Sweden, and the young queen? 4. What about some Swedish Adventurers? 5. What can you tell about a quarrel between the Dutch and the Swedes? 6. Who were the first settlers in New Jersey?



Delaware river. The Dutch built a log fort just below Camden ; and near there some families from Manhattan went in 1623.

7. Settlements were soon afterward made in other places in New Jersey. In 1630, a Dutchman named Michael Pauw, purchased Staten Island, and all of the land around Jersey City, from the Indians. When, in 1664, the English took New Netherland away from the Dutch, the territory between the rivers Hudson and Delaware was called New Jersey.

8. Soon after that, some families from Long Island settled at Elizabethtown. In 1665, Philip Carteret, brother of one of the owners of New Jersey, who had bought it from the Duke of York, came over with a charter, as governor of that territory. Then the people, for the first time, met together to make laws, and the colony of New Jersey was formed.

#### P E N N S Y L V A N I A

9. Was settled, chiefly by members of a Christian sect, called Friends, or Quakers, which first appeared about the year 1656. The leading man among them was George Fox, who taught a purely spiritual doctrine, in religion, and advised the people to please God rather than man, to dress plain, to never go to theatres or other places of amusement, and in a hundred ways to be plainer and better than people were in general. When he preached, he shook or quaked all over ; so the people called him and his friends, *Quakers*.

10. The son of one of England's best admirals, or great war-sailors, became a Quaker. His name was William

---

QUESTIONS.—7. What else can you tell about settlers there? 8. How was the colony formed? 9. What can you tell about the Quakers? 10. What can you tell of a celebrated Quaker?

Penn. The Quakers were despised in England, and Penn felt anxious to find a home for them in America. Through him they were enabled to purchase the western half of New Jersey. Quite a large number of them came over in 1675, and settled there, and they named their landing-place Salem.



WILLIAM PENN.

11. Soon after that, Penn received from King Charles the Second (a son of Charles the First, who was beheaded), a charter for a large territory west of the Delaware river, which he named Pennsylvania. That means *Penn's woody country*. It included the Swedish settlements already noticed. [See verses 4 and 5, page 42]. These people, as well as the Indians, became William Penn's warm friends, because he was a good and just man.

12. Many Quaker adventurers, and others; came over and settled in Pennsylvania. In 1682 Penn obtained possession of the present State of Delaware; and, at about the same time, he sailed for America.

13. Penn arrived in November, and was warmly welcomed by the people. Already the inhabitants had been together and made some laws. He soon met them in a general assembly at Chester, and gave them a charter for a freer government than they had enjoyed before. Then the colony of Pennsylvania was established, and the city of Philadelphia, which means City of Brotherly Love, was founded.

---

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you say about the beginning of Pennsylvania? 12. What did Penn do in 1682? 13. How was Penn received in America, and what did he do?

## SECTION IX.

## ADVENTURERS IN THE CAROLINAS.

1. The beautiful country between Virginia and Georgia once belonged to the same persons, and it was not divided into North and South Carolina until the year 1729. Let us first notice

## NORTH CAROLINA.

2. We have already observed (page 16), the efforts of Walter Raleigh to make a settlement on Roanoke island. That Island is near the coast of North Carolina, which region was included in what Queen Elizabeth then named Virginia.

3. First a few people went [1653], from Captain Smith's settlement at Jamestown and lived, some near the Roanoke river, and some nearer the sea. Quite a large number of other adventurers went from Virginia and settled at Edenton. Others soon followed; and, in 1663, William Drummond, a Presbyterian minister of the Gospel, was made their governor. That settlement was called the Albemarle County Colony.

4. It was in the same year, that King Charles the Second gave a charter to several Englishmen, for the whole country from Virginia to Florida. To please the king they called it Carolina, Carolus being the Latin of Charles. Two years afterward some people from the island of Barbadoes settled near Wilmington. This settlement also had a governor, and was called the Clarendon County Colony. These settlements, and others near, afterward formed the colony of North Carolina.

---

QUESTIONS.—1, 2. What have you to say about the Carolinas?  
3. Who first settled in North Carolina? 4. What can you tell about a charter, and North Carolina becoming a colony?

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

5. After a while, the owners of Carolina sent three ships [1670], full of Adventurers, to make settlements further south. After trying one or two places without being suited, they commenced a city near the sea, where the Ashley and Cooper rivers come together, and to please King Charles, they called it Charlestown. It is now spelled Charleston.

6. Adventurers from Europe, and many Dutchmen from New York, soon joined them. They met in Charleston and made laws; and the same year, when William Penn came to America, the South Carolina colony was fairly commenced. That was in 1682.

---

SECTION X.

## ADVENTURERS IN GEORGIA.

1. The cruel law of England, which caused great numbers of worthy people to be imprisoned because they could not pay their debts, caused a humane man and brave soldier, named Oglethorpe, to devise a place for the relief of such prisoners.

2. Oglethorpe was a member of Parliament, and he persuaded that body of men and the king, to agree to his plan. It was to let all out of prison who would agree to go to America and settle in the wilderness south of the Savannah river. Oglethorpe even went so far as to offer to go with them, and be their governor. The plan pleased everybody.

---

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell me about settlers in South Carolina? 6. Who joined them, and what did they do? 1, 2. What can you say about debtors in prison? Who took their part, and what did he do? What were his plans?



3. In the autumn of 1732, the very year in which Washington was born, Oglethorpe with one hundred and twenty Adventurers who were chiefly from the debtors' prisons, sailed for America, went up the Savannah river, and landed where the city of Savannah now stands. There they had a long and pleasant talk with the Indians.

4. The chief man among the Indians was named *To-mo-chi-chi*, who presented Oglethorpe with a buffalo skin, on which was the figure of an eagle. "Here," he said, "is a little present ; I give you a buffalo's skin, adorned on the inside with the head and feathers of an eagle, which I desire you to accept, because the eagle is an emblem of speed, and the buffalo of strength. The English are swift as the bird and strong as the beast, since, like the former, they fly over vast seas to the uttermost parts of the earth ; and, like the latter, they are so strong that nothing can withstand them. The feathers of an eagle are soft, and signify love ; the buffalo's skin is warm, and signifies protection ; therefore I hope the English will love and protect our little families." See the picture on page 5.

5. On that spot the Adventurers built rude cabins, and commenced the city of Savannah. Other adventurers soon came, and, in 1733, the colony of Georgia was begun. It was so called in honor of King George the Second, of England.

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about the first Adventurers in Georgia ? 4. Can you tell me a story of the Indians and Oglethorpe ? 5. What can you say of the colony of Georgia ?

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE PLANTERS, OR COLONISTS.

## SECTION I.

## PLANTERS IN VIRGINIA.

1. DURING the same year when the Pilgrims [verse 14, page 33], sailed from England, more than twelve hundred people went from that country to Virginia. They were mostly industrious persons, who wished to be planters; and among them were almost a hundred young women, who soon became the wives of settlers, as we have noticed, in verse 21, page 25. Then for the first time, there were *homes* in Virginia, and these formed the true foundations of a State. At the same time [1620], a Dutch trader took some negroes to Jamestown, from Africa, and sold them as slaves. This was the beginning of negro slavery in the United States.

2. Jamestown grew to a large village, and settlements elsewhere were soon made, even as high up the river as Richmond. The people asked for, and obtained of the London Company, a *Constitution*, or written agreement which made their laws strong, and allowed them to have elections to choose men to make laws. But the company appointed a governor for the people.

3. Trouble soon came. Powhatan, the father of Pocahontas, was dead, and his brother, who made Captain Smith a prisoner, [verse 14, page 24], and who hated the white people, ruled the nation. He perceived that the English would soon have all the lands of the Indians, and

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about people going to Virginia?  
2. What about the settlers in Virginia? 3. What caused trouble?

he determined to kill them before they became too strong for him.

4. At noon, on a beautiful day in April, in the year 1622, the Indians fell upon the white people, and in an hour they killed three hundred and fifty men, women, and children, who lived out of Jamestown. The people of seventy-two plantations or farms, out of eighty, were murdered or driven to Jamestown, in the course of a few days.

5. The English who remained alive took courage, attacked the Indians, and struck them with such terrible blows that the nation was almost destroyed. Sickness soon came upon the Planters, and, by the middle of the summer, not more than twenty-five hundred, of the four thousand who were there in the spring, remained alive in Virginia.

6. At about this time, King James determined to take Virginia under his care. The London Company heard of it, and, as they had lost money by attempting to settle it, they gave it up, without any ado. Virginia became a royal province [1624], and the king, instead of the company, appointed governors for the people. These were not always wise nor good.

7. Under a governor named Berkeley, the planters of Virginia prospered for a long time. They raised more food than they needed, and the tobacco which they cultivated was sold for a great deal of money. Yet they were not free from trouble, for disturbances in England concerning the king, were felt in the colony.

8. There were disturbances in England because the people there had got very tired of their king, who was a son of James Stuart, the mean monarch from Scotland, already

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What did the Indians do? 5. What did the English do? What happened to them? 6. What change did the king make? 7. What occurred under Governor Berkeley? 8. What did the people in England do?

mentioned. So they armed themselves ; and, led by a brave man named Oliver Cromwell, they first put King Charles in prison, and afterward [1649], cut off his head, which was then the way criminals were put to death, instead of by hanging, as now. Then Cromwell became ruler of England.

9. Most of the Virginia people were the friends of the king, and so was Governor Berkeley. But there were many who were Republicans, or opposers of the King. Between these parties there was much trouble. Finally a young man named Bacon placed himself at the head of the Republicans [1676], and defied the Governor. This was many years after the dead King's son, Charles the Second, was made monarch of England.

10. Berkeley was proud and exacting. He caused the people to be heavily taxed, and made Quakers and Baptists pay a great deal of money, in the way of fines, because they did not belong to the Church of England, as he did. There were many idle people in the colony who claimed to be the higher class, and most of these took sides with the Governor. But the best men—the industrious planters or farmers, and mechanics—took sides with Bacon.



CHURCH TOWER.

11. A sort of civil war soon commenced, and there was great trouble in Virginia, for awhile. Bacon having the most and the best people on his side, felt strong, and soon drove Governor Berkeley from Jamestown. Not long afterward, he was told that royal troops from England were coming up the river, to assist the governor and his party. Then he set fire to the village, and fled

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What now happened in Virginia? 10. What can you say of the governor and some of the people? 11. What can you tell me about a war in Virginia?



toward the York river. Every thing was consumed except the brick tower of the church, which is yet standing there.

12. A fever soon caused the death of Bacon, and the war ceased. Some of his friends were hanged, many were imprisoned, and the governor ruled the people worse than before. And when Berkeley went away, other governors who came while any king named Stuart was monarch of England, were generally haughty and cruel.

13. Charles the Second died, and his brother, James, became king. The people of England hated the very name of Stuart, and wished to get rid of him. So when his son-in-law, William of Orange, came from Holland with troops, the English people joined him, and soon drove [1688], the obnoxious king away.

14. William was a better man, and his wife Mary was a good woman. So when King James the Second had fled to France, William and Mary became joint monarchs of England. Then in Virginia, and in all the English colonies in America, there were better rulers, and the people were freer because they had more power.

15. From that time, which was in the year 1689, the planters of Virginia prospered wonderfully. They increased rapidly, were no more troubled by Indians, and raised everything in abundance. They had a great many negro slaves, who did all of the hardest work; and in the course of time these became as numerous as the white people, in Virginia.

---

## SECTION II.

### PLANTERS IN MASSACHUSETTS.

1. "Welcome, Englishmen! welcome, Englishmen!" were the first words which the Pilgrim Fathers [verse 15,

---

QUESTIONS.—12. What then happened? 13. What occurred in England? 14. What can you say of William and Mary? 15. What of the Virginian Planters and negro slaves?

page 33], heard from the lips of an Indian, after they had landed. It was the voice of a chief, named Squanto, who had learned a few English sentences from fishermen on the coast of Maine.

2. The Pilgrims had then been on the cold shores of Massachusetts Bay about a hundred days [1620-21], and this was the first Indian who had ventured to approach them. He told them of Massasoit, a Wampanoag sachem who dwelt not far off; and the governor of the Pilgrims sent for him. Massasoit came in stately pride, with sixty warriors as a guard, and seated himself upon a neighboring hill. There he smoked the pipe of peace [verse 4, page 4], with Governor Carver [verse 15, page 33], and made a treaty of friendship with the English, which remained unbroken for fifty years.

3. We have noticed [verse 17, page 34], that Governor Carver and almost one-half of his companions died before the flowers bloomed in the spring. For more than a year afterward, the remainder, and others who followed them from England, suffered dreadfully from cold and hunger. But they endured all, until they could raise grain and build themselves comfortable houses. Then they were quite happy, excepting when troubled by unfriendly Indians, who sometimes threatened to destroy them.

4. At length the Pilgrim Planters and the London merchants who were in partnership with them, [verse 12, page 32], disagreed. The Planters bought out the merchants, divided the soil equally among themselves, and prospered.

5. When the Puritans in England heard of the happiness of their friends in America, many more of them came

---

QUESTIONS.—1, 2. What happened to the Pilgrims at Plymouth? What can you tell of Massasoit? 3. What can you tell of the settlers and their progress? 4. What did the Planters do? 5. What can you tell about other settlers?

[1628], and settled at Salem, and two hundred more came the next year, and built cabins and planted at Charlestown.

6. In 1630, about three hundred more families came to Salem. They soon scattered into little settlements around the peninsula where Boston now stands. All of these settlements were united, and were called *The Massachusetts Bay Colony*, with John Winthrop for their governor. Finally, the Plymouth settlement was joined to these, and



JOHN WINTHROP.

from that time, that whole region where the Pilgrims and the Puritans lived, was called *The Massachusetts Bay*, until after the first war for independence.

7. The water at Charlestown and other places was very unwholesome, and from this, and other causes, full two hundred of the emigrants who came over in 1630, were laid in the grave before the next winter. A curious old man William Blackstone, mentioned in verse 1, page 40, lived alone on a peninsula, or land almost surrounded by water, near by. The Indians called the place Shawmut, which means "living fountains," because a spring of pure and sweet water bubbled out of the earth there.

8. The old man of Shawmut told Governor Winthrop about that spring, and he and many leading men built cottages near it, and lived there. Such was the beginning of the large city of Boston, now the largest town in all New England.

9. Winthrop was a wise man, and governed well. He made the Indians his friends, and invited the chiefs to his

---

QUESTIONS.—6. What about settlers at Salem, and the action of the Plymouth people? 7. How did the settlers suffer? What then happened? 8. What led to the founding of Boston? 9. What can you tell of Winthrop?

table. He had friendly letters from the Dutch on Manhattan ; and very soon a ship came to Boston from Virginia, laden with corn and some tobacco. Then it was that American commerce, or trading by ships, was commenced.

10. The Puritans [verse 8, page 31], had made themselves a good home, where those who differed from them in religion could not hurt them. In their great desire to be alone, as it were, and not let those who differed from them live among them, they became persecutors themselves—that is, they treated others who did not believe as they did, very badly. They even drove a minister of the Gospel, named Roger Williams [verse 2, page 40], away into the wilderness among the Indians, as we have noticed, because he would not do as they wished him to, and talked very plainly to them.

11. And now it was fifteen or sixteen years since the Pilgrims landed in the snow at Plymouth. Ship after Ship had come with people from England ; and in the year 1636, there were no less than twenty settlements in The Massachusetts Bay Colony.

12. The people of the Massachusetts Bay Colony, did not all agree, especially concerning religious matters, and sometimes there were warm disputes. A woman named Anna Hutchinson, produced a great stir in Boston. She offended the ministers by her teachings. She was first imprisoned and then banished, with her family. They wandered in the wilderness almost to Manhattan, and all but one of them were murdered by the Indians.

13. Already a minister of the Gospel named John Eliot, had preached to thousands of Indians around Massachusetts Bay, and many had become Christians. He visited

---

QUESTIONS.—10. How did the Puritans behave toward others? 11. What can you tell of the increase of settlers? 12. What happened among the Puritans? What to Mrs. Hutchinson? 13. What can you tell about Eliot's labors?

them in their wigwams, and wrote the whole Bible for them in their own language, and taught them to read it. When he died, many years afterward, there were five thousand *praying Indians*, as the converts were called, in New England.

14. King Charles, who afterward lost his head as we have noticed, began to fear that the people of Massachusetts, who were increasing so rapidly, and were so independent because so far off, might soon defy him, and perhaps have a king of their own. So he did all in his power to prevent English people from going there. But he could not stop them. They went by hundreds, because they were badly used at home. But when the king was dead, and persecution ceased, very few came over the ocean to America, because they were happy in England.

15. In the account, on page 39, of Adventurers in Connecticut, the Pequod Indians were mentioned, and a short account given of a war in which they were engaged. At the close of that war, the people of the settlements in New England thought it best to form a union, so as to act together for their safety in future. The best men, in the different settlements, met and agreed upon a union in 1643.

16. At this time there were twenty thousand people and fifty villages in New England. That union gave these white people great strength, and the bond lasted more than forty years, when each colony had become strong enough to act for itself. The union was similar to that of our United States under the Confederation that was formed at the close of the war of the Revolution. Their Congress was a meeting of men, appointed by each colony, to attend to the general affairs of the whole.

17. Unlike the people of Virginia, nearly all of the inhabit-

---

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell about King Charles? 15. What about a union? 16. What can you tell about the New England Colonies? 17. What can you tell about the New Englanders and Oliver Cromwell?



ants of Massachusetts Bay were against King Charles who lost his head, and favorable to Oliver Cromwell. [See verse 8, page 49]. While Cromwell ruled England, they had perfect freedom, and prospered wonderfully. They built ships and traded with the Spaniards in the West India Islands which, as we have noticed, were discovered by Columbus and other great sailors.

18. They also made shillings and sixpences of silver

which they obtained from the Spaniards. On one side of these coins, was the figure of a pine-tree, as may be seen in the picture. This was called



FIRST MONEY COINED IN THE UNITED STATES. "pine-tree money." It was the first metal money ever made in the United States.

19. We have already noticed that the Puritans did not like to have people who differed from them come among them. With such intruders they had a great deal of trouble. In the year 1656, two women, called Quakers, [verse 9, page 43] came to Boston. The Puritans had heard of such people, and they put these women in jail as soon as they arrived. Eight others came during the year, and they were all put on board of a ship and sent back to England.

20. Other Quakers came, and so annoyed the Puritans by their fault-finding with the ministers and the rulers, that they passed very harsh laws against them. Yet they continued to come, and the head men at Boston, filled with indignation, hanged some of them, whipped others naked through the streets, put several in prison, and drove others away, telling them that they should be hanged if they ever came back.

---

QUESTIONS.—18. What about the money of the New Englanders? 19. What can you tell about the Quakers? 20. How were the Quakers used in New England?

21. The Quakers did come back. Some were hanged and others suffered much. Finally the Puritans ceased persecuting them, and the Quakers stopped preaching against the ministers and rulers. They went to teaching the Indians, and became quiet citizens.

22. When, in the year 1660, Charles the Second, son of the beheaded king, became monarch of England, the people of New England suffered some because of their friendship for Cromwell. He dared not persecute them here, as his father and grandfather had done in England, but he annoyed them very much by injuring their trade with the West Indies and elsewhere. It was done in the following way :

23. The king ordered the people of New England to pay him so much money for every thing they received in certain ships. This is called an impost duty. He sent men to collect the money in Boston and other places, but the New England merchants would not pay it, and the people said they were right. The king finally recalled his tax-gatherers. This was the first decided act of defiance by the American people, toward the monarch of England, but it was not the last one.

24. And now, very serious trouble appeared. Old Massasoit, the Wampanoag sachem—the friend of the English—was dead. He had a brave son, named Metacomet. The white people called him King Philip. He saw the lands of his people where they hunted, and the streams wherein they fished, constantly passing into the possession of the English, and, in his cabin at Mount Hope, he sat and thought long about the future. He saw no hope for his nation, but in a war that should destroy all the strangers.

---

QUESTIONS.—21. What was done at last concerning the Quakers? 22. What can you tell about the second King Charles? 23. How did the king use the New Englanders, and how did they act? 24. What can you tell about a new trouble?

These strangers had wronged him, and he soon kindled a war. This is called

#### KING PHILIP'S WAR.

25. On a Sabbath day [July 4, 1675], just as the people of a little village, called Swanzey were returning from their churches, Philip and his warriors fell upon them. Several were killed, and some escaped to other settlements. The white people seized their arms, and surrounded a swamp, in Rhode Island, in which Philip had a sort of fort, and where he was gathering his warriors for other bloody deeds.



KING PHILIP.

26. The white people watched closely, but Philip and his men escaped. He hastened toward the Connecticut Valley, and aroused other Indians on the way. They spread death and destruction in every direction. In the course of a few weeks, several settlements were destroyed; the people were murdered, and their houses were burned. Philip was finally checked, and retreating to Rhode Island, he took refuge with the Narragansets.

27. Quite a large army of white people now fell upon the Narragansets, who, with Philip and his men, full three thousand in number, were in a swamp. In a little while, a thousand warriors were slain, many were made prisoners, and five hundred wigwams, with all the winter provision of the Indians, were burned.

28. Again Philip escaped, and he persuaded several tribes of the New England Indians to join him against the white people. These were soon upon the war-path; and

---

QUESTIONS.—25. How did King Philip's War commence? 26. What happened in the Connecticut Valley? 27. What can you tell of an attack on the Indians? 28. What was done in the spring of 1676?

in the course of a few weeks, in the spring of 1676, they spread terror, desolation, and death over a space of three hundred miles. Many of the frightened people had palisaded their houses with sharpened sticks driven in the ground, but these did not always keep the Indians away.



PALISADED HOUSES.

29. The white people chastised the Indians severely after this. During that year, they killed almost three thousand of them. King Philip was chased from one hiding-place to another, and finally he was shot in a swamp by an Indian friendly to the English. Then his head was cut off and carried in triumph upon a pole into the village of New Plymouth. So perished the last of the princes of the Wampanoags and with him the strength of the New England Indians.

30. King Charles the Second would have been glad, no doubt, if the Indians had killed all of the white people in Massachusetts, for he feared and hated them. They were increasing rapidly in numbers and wealth, and at the close of the war, the territories of the present States of New Hampshire and Maine were added to that of Massachusetts, and made the colony still stronger.

31. At length, the king determined to take all power in New England into his own hands, and not let the people govern themselves. He had already taken steps to do so, when he died, and his brother James became king. James was worse than Charles. He disliked a people who despised kings like himself, and he gladly sent a proud man, named Andros, to become governor of all the Planters in New England.

---

QUESTIONS.—29. What was finally done to Philip and the Indians? 30. What can you say of King Charles and the people of New England? 31. What can you tell of Kings Charles and James?

32. Andros was faithful to his master, and the people hated and despised him because his rule was oppressive. The Planters of Massachusetts were about to send him off to England in a ship, as they did the Quaker women, when the people in that country drove James away to France, and William and Mary (verse 14, page 51), became their monarchs.

33. The King of France took sides with James, and the French and English went to war with each other. The French and English people in America quarreled and fought too. These troubles continued for several years, and the event is called

#### KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

34. The white people of New England suffered dreadfully during King William's war, because the Frenchmen in Canada persuaded the Indians to join them in murdering the English. Several villages in New England were burnt, and many white people were killed. Women and little children were not spared.

35. On a cold night in February, 1690, the French and Indians came softly in the snow, and burned the village of Schenectada, near Albany, in New York. The people were fast asleep, and were awakened by the yells of the Indians and the burning of their houses. As they ran into the streets, they were killed by their enemies. The boldness of the French and Indians, in coming so near the thick settlements, caused the people of New York and New England to join together and make war upon Canada, where their enemies came from.

---

QUESTIONS.—32. What can you tell about Governor Andros? 33. What followed the expulsion of King James from England? 34. What happened in New England? 35. What can you tell about the destruction of Schenectada? and what was the effect?



36. They made great preparations. They sent a naval force up the St. Lawrence to attack Quebec ; and hundreds of soldiers were sent by land. But they did not succeed. The troops did not get to Canada ; and the naval forces, who landed at Quebec, found the city too strong for them, with its soldiers, and cannons, and heavy walls around it.

37. This war finally ended in 1697. In the mean while, King William had united the colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts, Maine, and the region beyond, called Nova Scotia, or New Scotland, made them into a royal province, and called it Massachusetts Bay Colony. Sir William Phipps, who commanded the ships sent to Quebec, was appointed governor. But the people did not like the new arrangement very well, and plainly told the king's officers so.

38. A great many people, in the days we are considering, were foolish enough to believe in witches, or persons in league with the Evil One. One day, two young girls in Salem commenced twitching and acting very strangely. An old Indian woman was accused of bewitching them. Pretty soon others began to act just as strangely, and in almost every house somebody was apparently "bewitched." Homely old women were first accused of being the witches, but at last, all sorts of people were suspected.

39. Even the wife of Governor Phipps was called a witch ; and a very good minister of the gospel was accused, and was afterwards hanged. A great many innocent people were imprisoned, and otherwise punished. During the six months that this frightful delusion prevailed, twenty persons were hanged. At last the rulers and people came to their senses, and the supposed witches disappeared.

40. This trouble had passed away, and the long war

---

QUESTIONS.—36. What can you tell about an expedition to Canada ? 37. What new arrangement was made by the king ? 38. What can you tell about witches ? 39. What about the sufferings of the people ? 40. What new troubles came ?

had ended, and people began to hope for happier days. But they were disappointed. The French and Indians continued to plunder and murder the English who lived in the wilderness, and even villages were attacked and destroyed. The French wanted to get possession of the whole country, and the Indians loved war and plunder, and so they kept busy together in annoying the New Englanders.

41. England again became offended at something France had done. They quarreled and went to war. Queen Mary was dead, and her husband, King William, having been killed by a fall from his horse, Mary's sister, Anne, became Queen of England. On that account, this war, which was commenced in 1702, was called

#### QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.

42. As before, the French and English colonists in America went to war too, and again the white people in New England suffered dreadfully from the cruelty of the French and Indians. Fortunately for the people of New York, the Five Nations, as the tribes of Indians in the central and western part of the present State of New York were called, were honorable, and having agreed not to fight for or against either party, did as they had promised.

43. The New England Indians had made similar promises to the English, but the French wickedly persuaded them to break their word. Then there was great trouble all along the frontier, and every one was made afraid. Many people were murdered by the French and their dusky allies, villages were burned, and a large number of inhabitants were carried off by the Indians, as prisoners.

44. There was a little girl, named Williams, who was carried away from Deerfield by the Indians. She was the

---

QUESTIONS.—41. What changes took place in England? 42. What then happened in America? 43. What can you tell about troubles in New England? 44. What can you tell about a little captive girl?

daughter of a minister, and was kept among them until she grew to be a young woman. She came to love them very much, for they were kind to her, and she married a Mohawk chief, a brave man among the Five Nations.

45. Some of the New England Colonies joined together in raising an army and a fleet with which to chastise the French in Nova Scotia. In the course of three or four years they brought them under subjection, and then, to prevent more trouble, they took the country away from France and gave it to England.

46. In the year 1711, a great English war-sailor, named Walker, came to Boston with many ships and soldiers. These were joined by New England people, and they all sailed for the St. Lawrence river, to attack Quebec, that early French settlement which we have noticed in verse 38, page 18. Eight of Walker's ships were wrecked, and a thousand of his soldiers were drowned, when he returned to Boston much disheartened.

47. The French, the English, and the Indians, had now become tired of war, and in 1713 they all agreed to be friends. The chiefs of the eastern Indians went to Boston, and promised not to do the English any more harm. They kept their word; and, for thirty years, there was no more war in America between the French, the English, and the Indians.

48. In the year 1744, England and France quarreled again, and went to war, and, for the third time, the French and English colonists in America thought it proper to quarrel too, and commenced fighting. At that time, Queen Anne's successor, George the First, was monarch of England, and this contest was called

---

QUESTIONS.—45. What was done against the French in the East? 46. What can you tell about Walker's expedition? 47. What more can you tell of the English, French, and Indians? 48. What can you tell of a new quarrel with France?

## KING GEORGE'S WAR.

49. Eastward of Noya Scotia is quite a large island, called Cape Breton. Upon that island the French had a town named Louisburg, and there they built and thoroughly armed a very strong fort. This gave the French very great power in that quarter, and the people of New England and New York joined together to take the fort away from them.

50. The English in America disliked the French, because they had made the Indians act so cruelly. On a warm day in April, in the year 1745, a large number of soldiers sailed from Boston, for Cape Breton. On the way they were joined by several large English war-ships, from the West Indies ; and toward the middle of May they all landed not far from Louisburg.

51. The French people, seeing four thousand Englishmen coming with ships and cannon, were greatly frightened. After talking the matter over among themselves, they came to the conclusion that they could not drive their enemies away, and therefore there was no use in fighting. So they surrendered, on the single condition that their lives should be spared and good treatment be given them.

52. The King of France was much mortified by the capture of Louisburg ; and the next year he sent many heavy ships under a sea-warrior, the Duke D'Anville, to get the fort back again. Dreadful storms beat upon the ships, and many of them went to the bottom of the ocean. The remainder returned to France. From that time until now, the English have owned the island of Cape Breton, and every thing upon it, excepting private property.

53. France and England remained quiet a few years,

---

QUESTIONS.—49. What can you tell about Louisburg ? 50. What was done in the spring of 1745 ? 51. What did the French at Louisburg do ? 52. What can you tell of an expedition from France ? 53. What happened afterward ?



when another quarrel broke out, and caused one of the most distressing wars then ever known in America. It lasted seven years, and was called the FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR. This will be noticed presently.

---

### SECTION III.

#### PLANTERS IN NEW YORK.

1. We have observed, on page 29, how the Dutch made settlements on Manhattan island, and commenced building a city at the lower end of it. They called that city New Amsterdam. When Planters and their families came, a governor came also [1626]. His name was Peter Minuit. He bought of the Indians all of the land on which the city of New York now stands, for twenty-four dollars. We shall notice, presently, how New Amsterdam came to be called New York.

2. Governor Minuit built a strong inclosure and called it Fort Amsterdam. But he did something better than this, to keep the Indians from troubling the Dutch—he made them his friends, and traded honestly with them. He was also friendly with the people of New England, and did every thing to make New Amsterdam a pleasant home for all who came there. So commenced the colony.

3. In order to settle the country rapidly, the Dutch West India Company, verse 5, page 29, agreed to give a certain quantity of land to men who should lead or send a certain number of emigrants to settle upon it. Those who received lands in this way, were called *Patroons*, or patrons. The family of one of these *Patroons*, named Van Rensselaer, yet own large tracts of such land in the neighborhood of Albany.

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the Dutch on Manhattan? 2. What did their governor do? 3. What can you tell about *Patroons*?



4. When a new governor, named Van Twiller, came to rule at New Amsterdam, it was found that he could be easily persuaded to do what others wished him to. This made him do wrong and foolish things, and trouble soon followed his acts. He quarreled with the settlers in Connecticut, and he did not treat the Indians very well. Yet he was a much better man than Kieft the next governor.

5. Kieft loved money, power, and strong drink. He loved to quarrel with every body. He made the English in Connecticut, and the Swedes on the Delaware, his enemies. He quarreled with the Indians all around him, and with his fellow-citizens in New Amsterdam. His conduct soon made the Indians hate him, and his own people despise him.

6. Under some pretense, he made war first upon some Indians in New Jersey, and then upon others beyond the Harlem river. The people of New Amsterdam did not like these things, because their fur-trade with the Indians was lessened, and they plainly told the governor so. Kieft was somewhat afraid of the people, so he asked the leading men of the city to get together, and talk over these affairs with him. This was the first Representative Assembly in New Amsterdam.

7. Some of the people finally agreeing with the governor, he resolved to make further war upon the poor Indians. At this time a large number of Hudson's River Indians pursued by the Mohawks, had taken shelter at Hoboken, opposite New Amsterdam. Instead of being the friend of these poor people in their distress, Kieft took this opportunity to destroy them.

8. At the middle of a cold winter's night, Kieft's

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about Van Twiller? 5. What kind of a man was Kieft? 6. How did he offend the people? and what was done? 7. What did the governor do? 8. What wicked thing was done to the Indians?

soldiers crossed the Hudson, attacked the sleeping Indians, and before daylight almost a hundred helpless men, women, and children were either killed outright, or were pushed off the high banks into the freezing river. It was a cruel act, and the Indians all over the country were so angry, that they killed every white man they saw, and burned white people's houses everywhere.

9. This terrible Indian war finally ended. The white people were the strongest, and peace came. Kieft's conduct was so bad that the Company ordered him home. With a great deal of property obtained by wrong-doing, he sailed for Europe. The ship was wrecked, the property was lost, and Kieft was drowned.

10. Peter Stuyvesant, a brave soldier, became governor of New Netherland, in 1647. His kindness and honesty made the Indians his friends, and his bravery and justice made him respected by both the English on the east and the Swedes on the west. He ruled the people strongly, but wisely and faithfully.

11. The Dutch at length became jealous of the Swedes, who were rapidly increasing ; and as they were clearly in New Netherland, Stuyvesant was directed to bring them under his power. He had built a fort [1651], which the Swedes had attacked and taken possession of. This was sufficient cause for war, and with six hundred men he went to the Delaware river [1655], and soon made the Swedes acknowledge his power. [See verse 5, page 42.] He was their governor after that.

12. The Swedes being conquered, the Indians reconciled, and the English in Connecticut satisfied, Stuyvesant concluded all trouble was at an end. But there was some at his very door. We have noticed that Kieft once asked

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What happened to Kieft? 10. What can you tell of Stuyvesant? 11. What can you tell about the Dutch and Swedes? 12. How was Stuyvesant mistaken?

the leading men of New Amsterdam to get together [verse 6, page 66], and consult with him. Stuyvesant never did so; and finally the people who wished to be consulted, appointed a few good men to assemble [Dec. 1663], and propose certain laws.

13. Stuyvesant scolded, but the people were firm. They refused to be taxed without being consulted, and when he threatened to punish them, they plainly told him that they would willingly be under English rule, for the sake of enjoying English liberty. This was an unpleasant hint.

14. Soon after that, ships and soldiers came from England, took possession of the fort [1664], and compelled Stuyvesant to give up the whole country. That was a sad day for the proud governor, but he could not help himself.



CITY OF NEW YORK IN 1664.

Then he was sorry that he had not listened to the people, and made them love Dutch rule better. It was too late. His authority was gone forever. This was in 1664.

15. King Charles of England, who claimed the country as his own, and considered the Dutch as intruders, had given New Netherland to his brother James, the Duke of York. So its name was changed to that of New York, in honor of the Duke. The city was called so too, and many other things were changed. An English governor ruled; and the people soon found that they were no better off. Taxes were greater, and privileges were less.

16. A few years after this, England and Holland went

---

QUESTIONS.—13. What more can you tell of Stuyvesant and the people? 14. What soon happened? 15. What changes took place in New Amsterdam? 16. What other changes soon occurred?

to war. Suddenly many Dutch ships appeared in New York Bay, and the English were compelled to give up the city and whole country to them. When peace was made, these were given back again [1674], and from that time, until it became an independent State in 1776, New York belonged to the English.

17. Andros, already mentioned, who was afterward sent to rule all New England [verse 31, page 59], became governor of New York in 1674. The people, who disliked him, grew stronger and stronger every day ; and, finally, when he left, in 1683, they procured from the Duke a writing, which was called a *Charter of Liberties*. Then a Representative Assembly was regularly chosen by the people, and popular government was established.

18. When Duke James became King James, on the death of Charles [1685], he refused to let the people have an Assembly, and he began to oppress them in various ways. They had resolved to defy him, and were on the point of open rebellion, when the king was driven from England, and William and Mary became monarchs of that country. [See page 51.]

19. There was now no royal governor in New York, and the people chose Jacob Leisler, a talented merchant and leader of their military companies, to rule them. This gave offense to many leading men ; and, finally, when a governor was sent, Leisler was accused of treason.

20. The enemies of Leisler tried to persuade the governor to hang him and his son-in-law, Milborne, who was his aid. The governor refused. But one day, while the latter was drunk, after dining with one of their enemies, he gave his written consent to have them hanged [May, 1691],

---

QUESTIONS.—17. What can you tell about the people and government in New York ? 18. What can you tell about the king and people ? 19. What did the people do ? 20. What did the enemies of Leisler accomplish ?



and they were both dead before he became sober. The people were very indignant, and Leisler and Milborne have ever been regarded as martyrs by those who think the people have a right to choose their own rulers.

21. From that time there were two political parties, violently opposed to each other, in New York. One took sides with the governor, whoever he might be at the time, and the other with the people. Those who favored the governor were called Aristocrats, and those who favored the people were called Democrats.

22. Each party had a newspaper, and through this, as well as in public meetings and the Colonial Assembly, they quarreled continually. The Democratic editor, named Zenger, published something offensive to the governor, in 1734, and he was put in prison. The best lawyer then in America was employed in his favor, and he was finally set at liberty, by the decision of those who tried him.

23. This decision made great rejoicing among the people, and they gave the lawyer, Mr. Hamilton of Philadelphia, a gold box, in which was a writing that gave him the privileges of a citizen, in New York. This was considered a great victory, because it established the liberty of the PRESS in New York. From that time until the commencement of the French and Indian war, the history of New York is made up chiefly of the stories of party quarrels.

---

## SECTION IV.

### PLANTERS IN MARYLAND.

1. The people at St. Mary's, where [verse 5, page 36], the first settlement in Maryland was made, formed a more

---

QUESTIONS.—21. What can you tell of parties in New York? 22. What can you tell about a newspaper difficulty? 23. What was the effect of the decision? What of the history of New York from that time? 1. What can you tell of the government of Maryland?



convenient government, after they had been there six years, by choosing [1635] a few men to make laws for the whole of them. This is called a Representative Government, because a few represent the many. Our Government is such a one.

2. The people of that colony, as well as those of others, had some troubles with the Indians, but they did not last long. Then they quarreled and fought among themselves. A man named Clayborne had traded with the Indians, and made settlements in Maryland, before Calvert and his people came, so he claimed to have a better right to the country than Lord Baltimore. Many of the people thought so, too, and they and those who thought otherwise, fought about it in 1645 and 1646. Clayborne's party got the worst of it.

3. The Maryland Legislature did a good thing in 1649. They made a law which allowed the people to worship God as they pleased. The Quakers and Churchmen, who were persecuted in New England, and the Puritans who were badly used in Virginia, went to Maryland to live, and the colony grew very fast.

4. The troubles in England at the time when King Charles was beheaded [verse 8, page 49], made trouble in Maryland, also ; for many of the people took sides with the king, and many others with Cromwell, as they did in Virginia [pages 49, 50]. These parties quarreled a great deal, and they were all unsettled and unhappy for many years.

5. Finally the people of Maryland quarreled about religion. The earlier settlers were mostly Roman Catholics. When the law that allowed every body to worship God as he pleased, became known, a great many Protestants, as

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell of troubles there? 3. What did the Legislature do? 4. What was the effect of troubles in England? 5. What can you tell of a religious quarrel?

those who were not Roman Catholics were called, came there to live.

6. In 1654 there were more Protestants than Roman Catholics in Maryland, and they ungenerously changed the laws, and deprived Roman Catholics of their rights. This led to hot quarrels, and finally to a war that lasted two years. Such a war of a people among themselves, is called Civil War.

7. Lord Baltimore, who owned Maryland by a charter from the king [verse 4, page 36], was a Roman Catholic, and the Protestant Legislature went so far as to take all power and right away from him, and give them to the people. These things made great unhappiness in Maryland; but finally, in 1660, when the dead king's son, Charles the Second, became monarch, he gave every thing back to Lord Baltimore; and for almost thirty years afterward, the colony was quite peaceable, and prospered.

8. All worshiped God as they pleased, in Maryland, and every thing was going well, when King James the Second of England was driven away to France in 1688. That king was a Roman Catholic. The governor of Maryland was also a Roman Catholic, and he did not like, at first, to own the Protestant William and Mary [verse 14, page 51] as his sovereigns.

9. This hesitation made a busy-body, named Coode, tell the Protestants that the governor was going to call in the surrounding Indians to murder them all. They armed themselves, and, led by Coode, they took possession of all the public writings, and the government, and declared they would have nothing more to do with the owner of Maryland.

10. The Protestants ruled the colony, by representa-

---

QUESTIONS.—6. What did the Protestants do? 7. What can you tell about Lord Baltimore? 8. What can you say of the king and the Maryland governor? 9. What did a busy-body do? 10. What change took place in Maryland?

tives, until 1691, when King William took matters into his own hands, declared Maryland to be a royal province, and appointed a governor himself. Then the Church of England was made the religion for all in Maryland, and the Roman Catholics, who chiefly settled the country, were deprived of many of their rights.

11. In 1716, the rights of Lord Baltimore were restored. He was then dead, and his oldest son was an infant. The guardians of the little boy took good care of matters for him till he grew to be a man. He and his family owned Maryland, and appointed the governors, until 1776, from which time the people have chosen their own rulers, for Maryland then became one of our States.

---

## SECTION V.

### PLANTERS IN CONNECTICUT.

1. We have seen how the settlers or adventurers in the Connecticut Valley, and at New Haven, became planters. Those of New Haven were disposed to be merchants, also, and they sent ships to different parts of the world to trade. But after losing several of their vessels, they concluded it would be better to be nothing else but planters. They were a religious people, and they made the Bible their only Law-Book, and its teachings the foundation of their government.

2. Stuyvesant, the soldier-governor of New Netherland, went to Hartford, on the Connecticut river, in the year 1650, and, in honest and friendly talk, settled all of the disputes about lands with the planters there. Two years afterward, when England and Holland went to war, the

---

QUESTIONS.—II. What can you tell of Lord Baltimore's family?  
1. What did the New Haven people do? 2. What can you tell of the Dutch and English?

New England people foolishly believed that the Dutch in New Netherland wished to fight them, and that they had employed the Indians to kill all the white people eastward of the Connecticut river. So they prepared to fight the Dutch, but they soon found that there was no truth in the foolish story.

3. When Charles the Second became monarch [1660], the Connecticut Valley people asked him for a charter. He refused. Then the Connecticut governor (Winthrop), whose father had been a great friend of the dead king, went to England to see Charles about it. The king's father had given the governor's father a ring. This the governor gave to Charles, and he was so pleased that he granted a charter to the Connecticut river people, which included Rhode Island and the New Haven colony, and extended west to the Pacific Ocean.

4. Rhode Island refused to be thus joined to Connecticut, but the New Haven colony agreed to the union, and so, in 1665, the real colony of Connecticut was formed, and remained so until it became an independent State, more than a hundred years afterward. Rhode Island and Connecticut quarreled about the boundary line between them, for sixty years, when the dispute was settled in a friendly way.

5. In the year 1674, Andros, then governor of New York (verse 17, page 69), claimed the right to rule the people of Connecticut, and went there to assert it. They soon sent him away; and for a dozen years every thing went on pleasantly and prosperously.

6. Andros, as we have noticed [verse 31, page 59], came over in 1687, as governor of all New England, and tried

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about a charter for Connecticut? 4. What can you tell about Rhode Island and Connecticut? 5. What can you tell of Andros? 6. What did he afterward try to do?



to take away the charters from the colonies. Late in autumn he went to Hartford, to get the Connecticut charter which King Charles had given them. The people treated him politely. They knew his errand, and were prepared.



ANDROS AND THE CHARTER OF CONNECTICUT.

7. Andros went into the Assembly or Legislature, and told them to bring the charter to him. The law-makers

---

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you tell about Andros and the Connecticut charter?



talked about it a long time, until it became dark and candles were lighted. Then the charter, nicely packed in a long mahogany box, was brought and laid upon the table; but just as Andros stepped forward to take it, the lights were all put out.

8. When the candles were again lighted, the charter could not be found. A plan had been laid to keep it from Andros. In the darkness, Captain Wadsworth snatched it up, ran some distance into a field, and hid it in the hollow trunk of an old oak-tree. There it remained until Andros was driven away from New England, when it was brought out. [1689], and a new Assembly was held under it, at Hartford.



THE CHARTER OAK.

9. That venerable and venerated tree stood in the city of Hartford, one hundred and sixty-nine years afterward. On a very stormy night in August, 1856, it was blown down, and now it has passed away forever. It was known by the name of *The Charter Oak*.

10. Again the people of Connecticut showed their bravery and love of freedom. Governor Fletcher, of New York, claimed the right to rule in Connecticut. The people there refused to obey him. He went to Hartford [1693], called out the militia, and commenced reading a paper which gave him the right. That same Captain Wadsworth who hid the charter, now commanded the militia, and he ordered the drums to be beaten. "Silence," said the governor, angrily. The drummers stopped, and he began to read. "Play," said Wadsworth

---

QUESTIONS.—8. How was Andros outwitted? 9. What can you tell about the Charter Oak? 10. Tell the story of Governor Fletcher and the Connecticut people.

to the drummers. "Silence!" shouted the governor. Wadsworth then stepped in front of him and said, "Sir, if they are again interrupted, I'll make the sun shine through you in a moment!" The frightened governor put the paper in his pocket, and went back to New York.

11. From that time until the French and Indian war, when there were one hundred thousand people in Connecticut, the Planters there shared in all the labors and expenses of the conflicts that occurred with enemies. They were also very prosperous.

---

## SECTION VI.

### PLANTERS IN RHODE ISLAND.

1. We have seen [verse 2, page 40], how Roger Williams was driven from Massachusetts, and became the founder of Rhode Island. Those who drove him away soon became jealous of him, and afraid of his free opinions; and it was claimed that "Williams's Narraganset Plantations," as they called Rhode Island, belonged to Massachusetts.

2. The charter that Williams obtained in 1643, was pronounced, in 1652, to be good by the Legislature of England, called the Long Parliament, and Massachusetts then gave up its claim. But there was a dispute about the boundary line between Rhode Island and Massachusetts, for almost a hundred years. It was settled in 1741.

3. Roger Williams was chosen the first governor of the Providence and Rhode Island Plantations, in 1653, and the colony prospered greatly, for every one was free. Ten years afterward Charles the Second gave them another

---

QUESTIONS.—11. What about the people of Connecticut? 1. What can you tell of Roger Williams and others? 2. What can you tell of the claim of Massachusetts to Rhode Island? 3. What can you tell of the progress of Rhode Island?

charter, which Andros took away. It was afterward restored, and under it the people lived one hundred and fifty-seven years.

4. Newport, near the end of the island nearest the sea, soon became a thriving town; and when, in 1732, Dr. Franklin's brother became the first printer there, it contained five thousand inhabitants. It was thought, at the time of the War of the Revolution, that Newport, and not New York, would become the largest commercial city in the country. There John Smibert, the first man who painted good portraits in America, lived for some time. The colony always bore its share in wars until the French and Indian contest, which we shall consider presently.

---

## SECTION VII.

### PLANTERS IN NEW JERSEY.

1. New Jersey was a part of New Netherland, and was included in the gift [page 68], which Charles the Second made to his brother James, the Duke of York. The same year when the English took possession of New Netherland [1664], the Dutch sold New Jersey to two noblemen, named Berkeley and Carteret.

2. These noblemen, anxious to have the country settled, offered the land without rent or taxes, for five years. This liberality, and the fine climate, caused many planters to go there, and farms were seen in all directions. The people first met to make laws, in 1668.

3. Every thing went on smoothly during the five years; but then, when the owners asked for a rent of only a half-penny an acre, the people grumbled, and declared they

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about Newport? 1. What can you tell about New Jersey? 2. What can you tell of a liberal offer? 3. How did the people behave?

would not pay it. They quarreled with the owners for two years, and then drove away the governor they had appointed, and chose one themselves.

4. The owners were about to compel the people to pay the rents, when the Dutch, as we have noticed [verse 16, page 69], took possession of the whole country again. When it went back to the English, new regulations were made, and the western half of New Jersey was bought by a Quaker [verse 10, page 43], as a place for his friends in England and elsewhere, to settle and have peace. It afterward went into the hands of William Penn [page —] and others, and the province was divided into EAST and WEST JERSEY.

5. More than four hundred Quakers came from England and settled in West Jersey, in 1675. They lived peaceably together, as Quakers always do, and prospered. Andros tried to rule them, but they would have nothing to do with him ; and, in 1681, the first Legislature of West Jersey met at Salem, and made some excellent laws.

6. After a while the Quakers bought East Jersey also ; and Thomas Barclay, who wrote a large book about his people, was made governor. Every thing was going on well, when the Duke of York became King James the Second, and the charters were taken away from both the Jerseys.

7. Now all was confusion, and remained so for several years after King James was driven away to France. Finally, in 1702, the Jerseys were united and made into a royal province, under Lord Cornbury, a bad man who was the governor of New York. Thirty-six years afterward, New Jersey was made independent of New York, and remained so. Lewis Morris was its first governor. It became an independent State in 1776.

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What changes took place ? 5. What can you tell of Quaker settlers in West Jersey ? 6. What of them in East Jersey ? 7. What changes again took place ?



## SECTION VIII.

## PLANTERS IN PENNSYLVANIA.

1. William Penn, as we have noticed, joined the territory of Delaware to Pennsylvania in 1682. Then the colony of Pennsylvania fairly commenced, and a great many planters came over from England and settled there.

2. Penn was a just man, and treated the Indians so well that they loved him, and called him "Good Father Penn." He bought their lands instead of taking them without leave; and he told them that he and his people wished to live with them as brothers.

3. In the autumn of 1682, Penn laid out the city of Philadelphia. That word, as we have noticed, means "City of Brotherly Love." Within a year, almost one hundred houses were built; and every day the Indians came with wild fowls and the flesh of deers, to present to Good Father Penn. Never was a State blessed with a better beginning; and, so long as the Quakers ruled Pennsylvania, peace and prosperity prevailed there.

4. In 1683, Penn called the representatives of the people together, and gave them a "Charter of Liberties." It was so very just, that all were made happy. It was agreed that all might worship God as they pleased; and to the people he gave the privilege of choosing their own rulers. So they were a perfectly free people, as we now are.

5. Penn returned to England, and soon afterward King James the Second was driven away to France. He and Penn had always been good friends, and because the Quaker would not speak harshly about the king, he was

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What was done in 1682? 2. What can you tell about William Penn? 3. What can you tell of Penn and Philadelphia? 4. What did Penn do for the people? 5. What happened to Penn in England?



suspected of being an enemy to the new monarch. He was put in prison, and Pennsylvania was taken from him and made a royal province under the control of the governor of New York.

6. Not long afterward Penn was let out of prison, for it was found that he was a friend of William and Mary. Pennsylvania was given back to him, and he came over to America in 1699, to look after his affairs.

7. The people asked Penn for a more liberal charter, and he granted it in 1701. The people of Delaware now asked him to let them have a Legislature of their own, and he granted that, also. From that time, until the War for Independence in 1776, Pennsylvania and Delaware were under one governor, but had distinct Legislatures.

8. Soon after making these arrangements, William Penn returned to England. He never came to America again, for his health failed, and he died in 1718, leaving Pennsylvania to his three sons. These and their heirs owned the province until 1776, when it was purchased by the people for more than half a million dollars.

---

## SECTION IX.

### PLANTERS IN THE CAROLINAS.

1. The owners of the Carolinas, knowing that they possessed a very beautiful country, and that a great many Planters were going there, thought it would be wise to make a government for it, like that of England, with all sorts of grand people, excepting a king. So they employed two or three learned men to write a *Constitution* for the purpose.

---

QUESTIONS.—6. What was the result of Penn's imprisonment? 7. What more can you say of Penn and his family? 8. What can you tell of Pennsylvania and Delaware? 1. What did the owners of the Carolinas wish to do?

2. At first, the Planters in the Carolinas ridiculed the idea of having barons, earls, lords, and dukes, with their fine houses, and horses, and carriages, and servants, in the woods of America! And when they found that the owners were in earnest, the strong and industrious Planters told them plainly that they would have no such government.

3. There was a long quarrel about it, and finally the owners were compelled to give up their grand scheme. Then they tried to get money from the Planters, by a duty on goods, that is to say, making them pay so much for every thing that came in ships, and in other ways. The people got very indignant at last, drove the governor and other officers away, and for two years they managed their own affairs.

4. When these quarrels were settled, a very mean man, named Seth Sothel, who loved money more than any thing else, was sent to govern the Carolinas. He cheated every body. After being there six years, he left, just as the people were going to put him on a ship, and send him to England. Then some better governors came, but none made the people so happy and prosperous as the good Quaker governor, John Archdale.

5. These troubles happened in the northern part of the Carolinas. At the same time, the Planters in the southern part were prospering, and were rapidly increasing. They formed a Legislature in 1674, but there was such a mixture of people, that they did not agree very well. There were English, Scotch, Irish, and Dutch, Protestants and Roman Catholics, and they disputed continually.

6. But when, in 1680, the Indians attacked the settle-

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What did the Planters think of a new scheme of government? 3. What can you tell about the owners and the Planters? 4. What can you tell of Sothel and others? 5. What was done in South Carolina? 6. What can you tell about the Indians and the Planters?

ments, they all united for defence, and forgot their quarrels, while they conquered the Indians. That same year, the city of Charleston was laid out, and it soon became a flourishing village. The Planters continually increased, and many went up the Santee and Edisto rivers, where they cultivated fine farms.

7. Many Huguenots [verse 16, page 13] came from France to settle there, and have peace. The English disliked the French, and would not allow them to take any part in making laws, or in other management of affairs. The French people were treated so for about ten years, when the English, finding them better than they expected, began to love and respect them, and then gave them all the privileges of citizens.

8. Like their more northern friends, the Planters in the south refused to have any thing to do with the grand movement prepared by the owners. They quarreled with the governor, drove him away, and took public matters into their own hands. This happened in the year 1690.

9. In the midst of this trouble, Seth Sothel went there, and the people foolishly allowed him to be their governor. He robbed and cheated them, as he did the people of the northern colony, and at length they drove him away. After that they would have no other governor from the owners, till the good Quaker, Archdale, came to rule both Carolinas, in 1695.

10. The Planters had peace and prosperity while Archdale remained, which was not a great while. From the close of his time, the histories of the two Carolinas are quite distinct, although the provinces were not separated until 1729, after which they were known respectively as North Carolina and South Carolina.

---

QUESTIONS.—7. How were French people treated there? 8, 9. What can you tell about the government of South Carolina? 10. What can you say of Archdale?

## NORTH CAROLINA.

11. At the beginning of the year 1700, Planters were cultivating lands in North Carolina from the sea-shore to the Yadkin river. The Indians were dying rapidly. Many had gone further into the forests, and the people of different countries were coming to occupy their lands.

12. For several years all was peaceful, and the Planters no longer dreaded the Indians, when a terrible calamity befell them. The Tuscarora Indians were yet quite strong, and they persuaded the broken Indian families in that region to join them in killing all the white people. In one night, in 1711, they murdered one hundred and thirty Germans ; and for three days they destroyed the people, and plundered and burned their buildings, in all directions.

13. The people of South Carolina came to help their neighbors. The Indians were driven back, but the war continued more than a year. Finally, in the spring of 1713, eight hundred Tuscaroras were made prisoners, and the rest fled north and joined their brethren, the Five Nations, in New York. Then was formed the union known as the SIX NATIONS, namely, the Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Cayugas, Senecas, and Tuscaroras.

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

14. The Spaniards at St. Augustine, in Florida [verse 18, page 14], became troublesome, and in 1702 the governor of South Carolina prepared twelve hundred soldiers to go there and attack them. Half of these were white people, and half of them were friendly Indians.

15. Some of these soldiers went by land, and some by

---

QUESTIONS.—11. What was the condition of North Carolina in 1700? 12. What can you tell of an Indian massacre? 13. What about an Indian war? and how did it end? 14. What can you tell about the Spaniards in Florida? 15. What did the Carolinians do?



water. They did not succeed in driving the Spaniards away from St. Augustine, as they expected to, and they went home disappointed. This affair cost the Planters of South Carolina many thousand dollars. They had very little gold and silver, so they made paper-money for the first time—such as we use—to pay the expenses with.

16. The next year, the governor and some soldiers marched against the Indians in Georgia and Florida, who were friends of the Spaniards. They took several hundred of them prisoners, and desolated their country.

17. Soon after this, another governor of South Carolina [Johnson] tried to make all the people worship God according to the forms of the English Church. Those who would not, were persecuted. This made a great many people uneasy, and disputes continued a long while. The Churchmen had to give up, at last, and the people were allowed to think and act about religion as they pleased.

18. A greater trouble appeared in 1706. The angry Spaniards sent many soldiers, in several French and Spanish ships, to attack Charleston and take possession of the country. The ships came into Charleston harbor, and eight hundred soldiers landed. The South Carolinians were ready to meet them. They soon drove them all to their ships, and captured one of the French vessels.

19. A still darker trouble appeared a few years later. Several Indian tribes joined for the purpose of killing all of the white people in South Carolina, in the spring of 1715. In this great band there were full six thousand warriors. They commenced so secretly that one hundred people had been murdered in the back settlements before the news reached Charleston.

---

QUESTIONS.—16. What was done to the Indians? 17. What other trouble occurred in South Carolina? 18. What trouble did the Carolinians have in 1706? 19. What further trouble a few years afterward?



20. The governor of South Carolina acted promptly. With twelve hundred men, he marched against the Indians. After several hard fights, he drove them far back into the wilderness, and killed a great many. The Indians were dreadfully frightened ; and believing the white people to be such mighty warriors that they could not be conquered, they let them alone after that.

21. The people of South Carolina were now heartily tired of proud and money-loving governors. The owners, or *Proprietaries*, had never spent a dollar in helping them build up a State, or for paying the expenses of Indian wars. They had made the Planters pay their rents punctually, and in every way acted ungenerously toward them. At last the Planters asked the king to take the country into his own hands. He did so, and South Carolina became a royal province in 1720.

22. The people of North Carolina were just as tired of their governors, too, and talked of taking matters into their own hands, when the king bought the territory in 1729, and it became a royal province. The two Carolinas were thus separated. But the people were not much better off under the royal governors, and with these they were continually disputing, until they became independent in 1776.

---

## SECTION X.

### THE PLANTERS IN GEORGIA.

1. The town of Savannah, laid out by Oglethorpe [verse 5, page 47], was upon a high bluff, beautifully shaded with palmetto and other evergreen trees. It grew rapidly ;

---

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell about an Indian war ? 21. What brought about a change in South Carolina ? and how ? 22. What was done in both Carolinas ? 1. What can you tell about the Georgia colony ?

and within eight years full twenty-five hundred people had come to Georgia from Europe. Quite a large number of these were German and Swiss families. There were also many lazy people among the immigrants; and, as the climate was very hot in summer, very little work was done in the fields. So the colony did not prosper.

2. Oglethorpe was wide awake. He knew the Spaniards at St. Augustine would soon become jealous of his colony. Being in England in 1736, he persuaded three hundred tall and stout Scotch Highland soldiers to come over with him. With these he thought he might defy the Spaniards.

3. A great soldier of the cross, as gospel ministers are sometimes called, came with him at the same time, to preach to the Indians and persuade the Planters to be better people. It was John Wesley, the founder of the Methodist Church. But the people cared very little for what he said. Then another great preacher (George Whitefield) came, and tried to do them good in many ways, but he labored almost in vain. Oglethorpe felt discouraged, for he well knew that without industry and goodness, his colony would not thrive.

4. As Oglethorpe expected, the Spaniards soon began to show their jealousy. So he built some forts in the lower part of Georgia. This made the Spaniards indignant, for it seemed like a threat, and they told Oglethorpe that he and all the English must leave the country below the Savannah river, or they would drive them out.

5. Oglethorpe was not alarmed, but he went to England and got six hundred more good soldiers. Just then war broke out between England and Spain, and Oglethorpe concluded not to wait for the Spaniards to come against

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about Oglethorpe? 3. What about good men in Georgia? 4. What offended the Spaniards? and what was done? 5. What did Oglethorpe do?

him, but he marched against them, with his own troops, and some South Carolinians and Indians. He had almost reached St. Augustine, when sickness and want of food compelled him to go back to Savannah.

6. Two or three years afterward, the Spaniards, with many vessels and soldiers, came to invade Georgia, and drive the Planters away. Oglethorpe was prepared for them, and in the lower part of Georgia, and upon an island near there, the English and Spanish soldiers came very near having hard battles.

7. One day, when Oglethorpe was preparing to go secretly around and attack the Spaniards, a Frenchman in his army ran away and told the enemy all about it. Oglethorpe laid a plan to punish the runaway and trick the Spaniards.

8. He wrote a letter to the Frenchman, telling him that a British fleet was near St. Augustine, and also spoke about his doing all he could for the English, in the Spanish camp. Then he gave a young Spaniard, who was his prisoner, some money, and told him to carry the letter to the Frenchman. Instead of that he carried it to the Spanish commander. That was just what Oglethorpe wanted. The Frenchman was arrested as a spy, and the Spaniards were dreadfully alarmed at the idea of a British fleet being near St. Augustine.

9. Just then some Carolina vessels appeared. The Spaniards thought they were the English fleet. They resolved to attack one of Oglethorpe's forts, and then go to St. Augustine as quickly as possible. On the march Oglethorpe attacked them, and so many Spaniards were killed that the spot is yet known as Bloody Marsh. So Georgia was saved.

---

QUESTIONS.—6. What did the Spaniards do? 7. What did a Frenchman do? 8. What story can you tell about the Frenchman? 9. What can you tell about a battle between the English and Spaniards?

10. Oglethorpe went to England in 1743, and never returned to America. That year a sort of government was formed in Georgia, but the colony did not prosper. The Planters did not own the land they cultivated, and they were not allowed to traffic with the Indians, nor trade, in ships, with the people of the West India islands. On these accounts, there was very little inducement for the people to be industrious and improve the lands.

11. Finally a change came. The king took possession of Georgia in 1752, and from that time until our War for Independence in 1775, it remained a royal province. The people might now own their own lands, traffic with the Indians, and trade in ships with the people of the West Indies. From that time Georgia began to thrive wonderfully. Negro slaves were then introduced ; and from that period until their Emancipation in 1863, most of the hard labor in that State was done by slaves.

---

## SECTION XI.

### THE STRIFE FOR POWER ; OR, THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. We have already noticed the wars in which the French and Indians fought the English in America. These were called, it will be remembered, King William's war, Queen Anne's war, and King George's war. The quarrels that brought on these wars were about matters in Europe, with which the colonists had really very little to do.

2. The contest known as the French and Indian war, and also the Seven Years' war, began in a quarrel about the

---

QUESTIONS.—10. What change took place ? Why did the colony not prosper ? 11. What happy change occurred ? 1. What were the wars between the French and English in America called ? 2. How did the French and Indian war commence ?



boundary line between the English and French in the Ohio country, or the region around the head-waters of the Ohio river. At that time there were about one hundred thousand French people in America, and ten times as many people in the English colonies.

3. The French were great traffickers with the Indians, all over the country west of the Alleghany mountains, from Lake Erie to New Orleans, and they built a great many forts in the wilderness. This made the English jealous.

4. After a while, some English people, by permission of King George of England, went into the Ohio country, and commenced marking out land upon which to settle. The French told them that they had no business there, for the country belonged to the King of France. So they quarreled about it, when, in fact, the country belonged to the Indians. One old Indian, who heard the quarrel, said, "You English claim all one side of the river, and you French all the other side; where does the Indians' land lay?" They could not answer.

5. The French had soldiers there, and, with these, they caught some of the English [1753] and put them in prison, and drove the remainder away. Dinwiddie, the Governor of Virginia, whose rule extended over a part of that country, now thought it high time for him to take up the quarrel. So he sent a young man, named George Washington, to ask the French commander what he meant by such conduct.

6. Young Washington, who afterward became the most eminent man in America, was prudent and brave, and could be relied on. In cold weather, he traveled through the woods and over rivers, with ice and snow everywhere, full four hundred miles, before he found the French commander. He had a long and polite talk with him, and carried a letter

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell of the French? 4. What can you tell of events in the Ohio country? 5. What did the French and the Virginia governor do? 6. What can you tell about Washington?



back to Governor Dinwiddie [January, 1754], which was not very satisfactory.

7. The French commander gave Dinwiddie to understand, that he had a right to be in the Ohio country with his soldiers, and that he should stay there as long as he pleased. Dinwiddie then mustered the Virginia soldiers, and sent them to drive the French away. He made young Washington a major, and gave him the command of the first body of troops that went against the French. Troops were also sent from New York and South Carolina.

8. While these things were taking place, the English commenced building a fort where the city of Pittsburg now is. The French drove them away, finished the fort, and called it Du Quesne [Du Kane], which was the name of the Governor of Canada.

9. Washington marched rapidly forward ; but hearing that a large number of French soldiers were coming to meet him, he went back a little way, and built a fort, which he named Necessity. At that time, Colonel Fry, who commanded all the troops sent against the French, died [May, 1754], and Washington became the chief leader.

10. The French attacked Fort Necessity ; and after fighting ten hours [July 3, 1754], Washington and his soldiers were compelled to give up, and became prisoners. The next day the French commander let them all go, and they returned to Virginia.

11. During that summer [1754], a number of men, appointed by several colonies for the purpose, met at Albany, in New York, to consider how they should proceed to keep the French back. They first made a covenant of peace with the strong Six Nations, and then they agreed upon a plan

---

QUESTIONS.—7. What did Governor Dinwiddie do ? and why ? 8. What happened where Pittsburg is ? 9. What can you tell of Washington's expedition ? 10. What about a battle ? 11. What was done at Albany in 1754 ?

made by Dr. Franklin, by which the colonies should all be united as one nation, as our States now are. Many of the people, as well as the English Government, did not like it, and the colonies were not so united until many years afterward.

12. Excited by the French, the Indians now commenced murdering white families on the frontiers of New England and other places, and the English saw no better way than to make a regular war upon the French.

13. The English Government agreed to help the colonists; and in February, 1755, Edward Braddock, an Irish soldier, came to America with troops, and took the chief command. He met the governors of several colonies at Alexandria, in Virginia, and they arranged a plan of operations, or

#### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1755.

14. Three separate armies were to be mustered. One was to march against the French at Fort Du Quesne; another against French forts near each end of Lake Ontario; and a third against strong forts on Lake Champlain.

15. Already a fourth expedition had been arranged to drive the French out of Acadie, or Nova Scotia. Three thousand men sailed from Boston for the purpose. They took the French forts, and then cruelly drove the poor and innocent inhabitants to the woods, destroyed all their crops, and carried many away in ships. In one month a happy people were made the most wretched of any on the earth.

16. With two thousand men, Braddock marched from the Potomac river, toward Fort Du Quesne, having Washington for his aid. Braddock was a proud man, and would not

---

QUESTIONS.—12. What happened in New England? 13. What was done in 1755? 14. What was the plan of the campaign for 1755? 15. What occurred in the East? 16. What can you tell about Braddock?

listen to the advice of young Washington, concerning the best way to be prepared for the Indians. He marched proudly on, when, just at noon, on a hot day in July [1755], a shower of bullets and arrows came from the woods around him.

17. A dreadful battle now commenced. There were a thousand dusky warriors concealed in the woods. For three long hours the fight continued ; and every officer who rode a horse, except Washington, was killed or wounded. The dead bodies of the white people covered the ground ; and finally Braddock was shot, after having several horses killed under him.



GENERAL BRADDOCK.

18. Washington now took command. God had preserved him for greater deeds in after years. An Indian warrior declared that he had fifteen good shots at him, but could not hit him. He tried no more, for he knew the Good Spirit protected him. Under Washington's directions, the troops retreated, and the Indians did not follow.

19. Braddock was carried from the field and soon died. He was buried in the woods by torch-light ; and on the margin of the grave, with sorrowing officers around him, Washington read the solemn funeral service of the Church of England. Then all the troops went back to their homes.

20. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, commanded the troops that were to march against the French forts on Lake Ontario. He did not succeed in reaching them. He went to Oswego, in August, but storms on the lake, and sickness in his camp, prevented his going further. So he commenced

---

QUESTIONS.—17. What can you tell of a battle? 18. What can you tell of Washington? 19. What about the burial of Braddock? 20. What can you tell about Shirley?

building a fort there, and, leaving a few troops to take care of it, he marched back to Albany with the remainder.

21. The troops intended for Lake Champlain were com-



BURIAL OF BRADDOCK.

manded by an Indian agent among the Mohawks, Sir William Johnson. About six thousand of them were collected at Fort Edward [July, 1755], under General Lyman; and when General Johnson arrived there, he led nearly all of

---

QUESTION.—21. What can you tell about William Johnson?



them to the head of Lake George, and formed a camp, in September.

22. Indian scouts now informed Johnson that Dieskau, the French commander, was coming with many Canadians and Indians to attack him. He sent Colonel Williams, with a party of white soldiers and Mohawk Indians, to meet him. They were assailed and beaten by Dieskau [Sept. 8], who then marched rapidly forward to attack Johnson's camp.

23. Johnson had two cannons, upon a pile of logs and brush, which the French and Indians knew nothing about. When they came rushing forward, these were fired. Many of the enemy were killed, and the remainder, dreadfully frightened, fled to the woods, and Johnson won the battle. Dieskau was badly wounded, and died some time afterward.

24. General Johnson was told that the French were very strong at Crown Point and Ticonderoga, on Lake Champlain, and concluded not to go there. He built a fort where his camp was, and called it William Henry. He then left some troops there and at Fort Edward, and with the rest of his army marched back to Albany in October. Thus ended the campaign of 1755.

25. There was now a regular war between the English and French in America. As there appeared no prospect of the quarrel being settled soon, preparations were made on both sides of the Atlantic, for

#### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1756.

26. Lord Loudoun, a very indolent man, was appointed chief commander of all the troops, but he did not come to America until late in the summer. General Aber-

---

QUESTIONS.—22. What can you tell of a battle near Lake George? 23. What can you tell of another battle? 24. What did General Johnson then do? 25. What now occurred? 26. What can you tell of Loudoun and Abercrombie



ABERCROMBIE.

crombie, a great soldier, came in his place, in June, with a large body of troops from England and Ireland. England and France had then declared war against each other, and the battles were nearly all to be fought in America.

27. The plan of this campaign was similar to that of the last. Fort Du Quesne, and the forts on Lakes Ontario and Champlain were to be attacked. When Abercrombie

arrived, there were seven thousand troops at Albany, ready to march against the French on Lake Champlain. On account of some foolish difficulties they did not start until August, and then that great French soldier, General Montcalm, was well prepared to fight.

28. Early in August, Montcalm, with five thousand Frenchmen, Canadians, and Indians, went up Lake Ontario, and after a pretty hard battle [Aug. 11], took the forts at Oswego away from the English. They also made fourteen hundred of their enemies prisoners, and took from them many cannons, and vessels in the harbor.

29. The loss of Oswego was very disheartening. Loudoun was alarmed, and he ordered all the other expeditions to be abandoned. Forts William Henry and Edward were made stronger. A large number of soldiers were placed in block-houses and other small fortifications along the frontiers of Virginia and Pennsylvania, under the command of Washington; and similar strong places were made in the Carolinas.

30. During the spring and summer of 1756, the Indians

---

QUESTIONS.—27. What can you tell of the plan of the campaign of 1756? 28. What occurred at Oswego? 29. What was then done by Loudoun? and what movements took place? 30. What can you tell of Indians in western Pennsylvania?

killed or carried away almost a thousand white people on the western frontier of Pennsylvania and Virginia. Hearing that a greater portion of these Indians were at Kittanning, their chief town, Colonel Armstrong and three hundred soldiers attacked them there one night early in September. Their chiefs were killed and their town was destroyed. After that they were quiet. So ended the campaign of 1756.

31. Lord Loudoun was so dilatory, that he ruined every thing that he was ordered to do. While he was waiting, other commanders might have gained important victories. In consequence of his slowness, the French were again in possession of Louisburg [verse 49, page 64], and Loudoun resolved to make the capture of that fortress the chief business of

#### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1757.

32. Most of the people were disappointed, for they wished to have the French driven from Lake Champlain and the Ohio country.

33. Loudoun arrived at Halifax at the close of June, where he met a large number of war-ships and five thousand troops, from England. He was about to start for Louisburg, when he was told that the French had many more men and ships there, than he had with him. So he thought it more prudent to leave them alone. He returned to New York in August, when he was mortified and alarmed by the news that Montcalm had been doing a great deal of mischief in the north.

34. Toward the close of July, Montcalm and a large number of French, Canadians, and Indians, left Ticonde-

---

QUESTIONS.—31. What can you say about Loudoun? 32. How did the people feel? 33. What more can you say of Loudoun? 34. What can you tell of an attack upon Fort William Henry?

roga, and attacked Fort William Henry at the head of Lake George. The garrison, as troops in a fort are called, was commanded by Colonel Monro, a very brave officer. The chief commander, General Webb, was at Fort Edward, and when Montcalm approached, Monro sent to him for help.

35. For six days the brave Monro refused to give up the fort, every day expecting help from Webb. It was not sent, and at last he could hold out no longer, and surrendered on the third of August. Montcalm admired Monro's bravery, and promised that he and his troops should be used well, and conducted to Fort Edward.

36. Montcalm's intentions were honorable, and he endeavored to fulfill his promises. But his blood-thirsty Indians, two thousand in number, could not be controlled. Soon after the English left the fort, these savages fell upon them, killed a great many, plundered their baggage, and chased them almost to Fort Edward. Then Fort William Henry and all belonging to it were destroyed, and Montcalm marched back to Ticonderoga.

37. This disastrous event ended the campaign of 1757, and with it the command of Lord Loudoun in America. Thus far the English had lost by the war, chiefly for the want of a good chief commander. The Colonists knew this all the while, and felt irritated. If they could have chosen their own generals, and carried on the war themselves, no doubt they would have ended it the first year, by driving the French back to Canada.

38. Yet, whenever money or men were called for, the Colonists furnished them cheerfully, even while feeling the injustice of their own rulers, and of the English government. By these misfortunes the pride of the English people was touched, and at last, to their great joy, their

---

QUESTIONS.—35. What can you tell of Colonel Monro? 36. What dreadful event occurred? 37. What can you say about the war, so far? 38. How did the Colonists feel? and what gratified them?



wishes were gratified by having William Pitt, the most talented man in England, made the prime minister, or chief-manager of public affairs. He commenced, with great energy, preparations for

#### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1758.

39. Pitt appointed General Abercrombie in the place of Lord Loudoun. A large number of armed ships were prepared, and placed under the command of a great war-sailor, Admiral Boscawen ; and in America every body was determined to do something great this year.

40. It was agreed to attack Louisburg, Ticonderoga, and Fort Du Quesne. Late in May, Boscawen, with forty ships, left Halifax. Two great soldiers, Generals Amherst and Wolfe, with twelve thousand men, went with him, and early in June they landed near Louisburg. For almost fifty days there was fighting there. Then the French gave way, and five thousand of them became prisoners to the English.

41. While these things were going on in the east, General Abercrombie and young Lord Howe were leading almost twenty thousand men toward northern New York, to attack Ticonderoga. They went down Lake George, in flat-boats, on a beautiful Sabbath in July, and the next morning commenced marching through the woods and swamps toward Ticonderoga. They were soon attacked by the French, and Lord Howe was killed.

42. Every body mourned when they heard of the death of young Howe. He was so good that they all loved him. Captain Schuyler took his body to Albany and put it in a vault. Many years afterward his coffin was opened, when behold ! his beautiful brown hair had grown very long.

---

QUESTIONS.—39. What preparations were made for the campaign of 1758? 40. What can you tell of the expedition against Louisburg? 41. What occurred in northern New York 42. What can you tell of Lord Howe?

43. Abercrombie heard that more troops were coming to help the French, so he pushed on through the woods, without his cannons, to attack Ticonderoga. But he found it too strong for him, and after a hard fight for four hours, and losing almost two thousand men, he marched back to Lake George, and finally to Albany, leaving the French still in possession of Ticonderoga.

44. From Lake George, Abercrombie sent Colonel Bradstreet and three thousand soldiers to attack the French at Frontenac, where Kingston, in Canada, now is. They captured the fort in August, and then marching through the woods to the Mohawk river, where the village of Rome now stands, they assisted in building Fort Stanwix.

45. The army that marched against Fort Du Quesne was commanded by General Forbes. Colonel Washington was with him. Forbes, like Loudoun, was a very slow man, and it was late in the autumn before he got over the Alleghany mountains.

46. Washington then marched rapidly forward. The French at Du Quesne heard of his approach, and being greatly alarmed, they set fire to the fort and escaped down the Ohio river in boats. The name of Fort Du Quesne was then changed to Fort Pitt, in honor of England's prime minister. There the city of Pittsburg now stands.

47. It will be observed that the English and Americans *did* do great things this year. They took from the French three of their strongest forts, Louisburg, Frontenac, and Du Quesne, and frightened the Indians so, that they agreed not to fight the English any more. The American Planters now began to feel safer, though the war was not ended.

---

QUESTIONS.—43. What did Abercrombie do? 44. What can you tell about Bradstreet? 45. What can you say about Forbes? 46. What can you tell of the march against Fort Du Quesne? 47. What had the English done?

48. The final struggle was now at hand. Pleased with what had been done in 1758, Pitt determined to do more in

### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1759.

49. He resolved to send good officers and troops enough to conquer all Canada; and thus put an end to French power in America. For this purpose he appointed General Amherst to the command of all the troops in America and those to be sent from England.

50. In the spring of 1759, Amherst found twenty-four thousand troops in America, ready to invade Canada. Ships and soldiers were also sent from England. It was arranged to send one division by the way of the St. Lawrence river, to attack Quebec; another was to drive the French from Lake Champlain; and a third was to attack them at Fort Niagara.



LORD AMHERST.



RUINS OF TICONDEROGA.

51. When, on a hot day in July, Amherst appeared before Ticonderoga, with eleven thousand men, the French, who had just heard that

an English army, under Wolfe, was at Quebec, fled in haste

QUESTIONS.—48, 49. What did Pitt resolve to do? 50. What can you tell about the plan of the campaign for 1759? 51. What can you tell of Amherst on Lake Champlain?

to their fort at Crown Point. Amherst pursued them. They were dreadfully frightened, took to their boats, and fled over the Lake toward Canada. So the French were driven from Lake Champlain, and never returned. Fort Ticonderoga was partly destroyed.

52. Generals Prideaux [Pre-do] and Johnson sailed from Oswego in July, to attack Fort Niagara, at the mouth of the Niagara river. Prideaux was killed by the bursting of a gun at the first assault, and Johnson took command. For three weeks the French held out, when some of their countrymen and many southern Indians came to help them. But the English conquered them all, and took possession of the fort.

53. Wolfe, the greatest soldier of them all, was now near Quebec, with eight thousand troops, and a large number of battle-ships under the command of Admirals Holmes and Saunders. Quebec was a strong, walled town, a part of it three hundred feet above the river St. Lawrence. It was a hard city to fight against.

54. General Montcalm, the great French soldier, was the commander, and his army was in a strong camp along the St. Lawrence, from Quebec to the Montmorenci river. Wolfe first landed on the Island of Orleans, below the city, to attack this French camp. He also took possession of Point Levi, opposite, where General Monckton was stationed.

55. Early in July, Wolfe formed a camp below the Montmorenci, and a number of English troops crossed from Point Levi, and attacked the French just above that stream. On the beach, in the midst of a terrible thunder-



GENERAL WOLFE.

---

QUESTIONS.—52. What occurred at Niagara? 53. What can you tell of events at Quebec? 54. What can you tell of the movements of Wolfe and Montcalm? 55. What can you tell of a battle?



storm and the roar of the waters, a hard battle was fought, and full five hundred of the English perished.

56. Week after week now passed away. Wolfe was waiting, in vain, for Amherst to come and help him. At length, a fever laid the great soldier prostrate in his tent. At the beginning of September he called his wisest officers to his bed-side, and consulted upon what it was best to do. They soon decided.

57. Back of Quebec, and as high above the river, is a level spot, called the Plains of Abraham. It was resolved to scale these heights, and attack the city on its weakest side. Feeble as he was, the brave Wolfe determined to lead the troops. On the evening of the 12th of September, they went secretly in their boats, and at midnight they were on shore at a ravine that led up to the Plains of Abraham.

58. Montcalm had no suspicion of what the English were doing, and he was much surprised when, early in the morning, he saw their scarlet dresses and bright bayonets flashing in the sun, upon the Plains of Abraham. He immediately marched his whole army across the St. Charles river, and attacked the English.

59. A hard battle commenced at ten o'clock. Wolfe led the English, as the two armies came together, notwithstanding he was already wounded twice. Soon a musket-ball pierced his breast, and he fell. He was taken to the rear, fainting from loss of blood. Just then he heard a shout, "They run! they run!" "Who run?" asked Wolfe. "The French," was the reply. "Then I die contented," he said, and expired.



MONUMENT TO WOLFE  
AND MONTCALM.

QUESTIONS.—56. What can you tell of Wolfe and his plans? 57. What was now done? and how can you describe the places? 58. What can you tell of Montcalm? 59. What can you tell of the battle and death of Wolfe?

60. Montcalm was killed at about the same time ; and now, in the city of Quebec, one tall monument stands in memory of both of them. Five days after the battle, Quebec was given over to the English. Fighting then ended for the season, but Canada was not yet conquered. That event was accomplished in

#### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1760.

61. In the spring of 1760 the French made efforts to get Quebec back again. But they failed ; and their army was compelled to leave that neighborhood and flee to Montreal. That was now the last strong place held by the French in Canada.

62. General Amherst made great preparations during the summer, and, early in September, three English armies appeared before the doomed city of Montreal. Amherst came down the St. Lawrence with ten thousand troops and a thousand Indian warriors, and was met the same day by General Murray, from Quebec, with four thousand men. The next day Colonel Haviland arrived from Crown Point, with three thousand troops.

63. The French commander now saw that all was lost. He gave up the city and all Canada, on the 8th of September, and General Gage, whom we shall notice hereafter, was made governor. So the French and Indian War ended in America, but all was not settled, until a treaty was made at Paris, in 1763, between England and France.

64. Frenchmen kept the Indians at the South very restless. In the spring of 1760, some Cherokees having been injured by some white people, the whole nation commenced

---

QUESTIONS.—60. What more can you say about Wolfe and Montcalm? What was accomplished? 61. What can you tell about the French? 62. What occurred at Montreal? 63. What further occurred at Montreal? 64. What can you tell of an Indian war?

a bloody warfare upon the frontiers of Virginia and the Carolinas. This continued for more than a year. Finally the Cherokee villages were destroyed, and many of the warriors were killed by a small army of colonists, and their power was broken forever.

65. Soon after this, Pontiac, an Ottawa chief, induced several of the north-western tribes to join in endeavors to drive the white people from their country. Pontiac was one of the greatest Indians ever known. Like King Philip [verse 24, page 57], he saw the lands of his people passing into the hands of the English, and in despair he kindled the war in the summer of 1763. It was terrible for a time, but the Indians were finally conquered.

66. Pontiac fled to the country of the Illinois tribe, where he was basely murdered by an Indian, who did it for a barrel of rum given him by an Englishman. The great city of St. Louis now covers his burial-place. This was nearly the last sad act in the FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

67. Here the story concerning the American people as English colonists draws to a close. They soon became tired of being ruled by a king and legislature beyond the ocean, and resolving to rule themselves, struggled many years and gained the victory. We will now consider that struggle. It opens to us a new and more interesting scene than any we have noticed.

---

QUESTIONS.—65. What can you tell about Pontiac? 66. What can you tell of Pontiac's death? 67. What am I to tell you about next?

## CHAPTER V.

## SECTION I.

THE STRIFE FOR FREEDOM ; OR THE  
REVOLUTION.

1. THE story of the doings of the great Patriots, or those who loved their country better than their own ease and comfort, than silver and gold, houses and lands, and willingly suffered every thing for their country's good, is one of great interest to Americans.

2. When we read the story of the Revolution, in which Americans fought for independence of a power that oppressed them, we are not only led to love the Patriots in that war, but are made to feel a desire to do all we can to keep our country free and independent. Let us first consider

## THE PRELIMINARY EVENTS,

or what happened to bring about the war, called the Revolution, or the War for Independence.

3. We have noticed how, for a long time, the English people in America had troubles with their governors ; and that they did not like the kings of England any too well. But each settlement or colony was too small and weak to defy the king, so they submitted to wrong with a hope of one day becoming strong enough to cast off the burden.

4. We have seen how the colonists joined against the French and Indians ; and how, at last, being helped some by soldiers and sailors from England, they took the whole northern country, called Canada, away from the French,

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What are Patriots? 2. How does the story of the Patriots make us feel? 3. What has been said of the Americans? 4. What more have you heard about them?



made the Indians afraid and peaceful, and became really one great nation of Planters.

5. The wars in which they engaged made the Planters know how strong they were when united, and they felt a desire to become one people. They considered the subject, and finally they resolved that if the king and governors did not use them better than they had done, and allow them more freedom, they would defy them all, and govern themselves.

6. When the French and Indian War closed they hoped for better times, for a good young man had just become King of England [1761]. This was George the Third, who lived almost sixty years a king. If he could have had his own way, he would have been kind and indulgent to the Americans, but bad and often ignorant men advised him, and things went wrong.

7. The war just ended had cost England a great deal, and all the money in the king's treasury was spent. He asked his ministers or advisers how he should get more. "Tax the Americans," they said; "they are rich, and are willing to give you as much money as you want. Make them pay so much upon every thing they receive in ships. It is but little, and they will not mind it."

8. The young king did so, and sent men, called Commissioners of Customs, to collect the money. The people grumbled about it, and disliked the commissioners; and James Otis, a great Patriot of Massachusetts, spoke his mind plainly, and advised the people not to pay a penny. So the king did not get much money in that way.

9. The king and his advisers now tried another way to get money from the Americans. They made a law that ev-

---

QUESTIONS.—5. What did the Planters know and do? 6. What can you say of a young king? 7. What can you tell about taxing the Americans? 8. What did the king do? and how did the Americans feel and act? 9. How did the king and his friends try to get money from the Americans?

ery piece of paper on which bargains or agreements of any kind were written, should have fastened to it a little piece of blue paper, on which were stamped certain words, with a representation of a Crown, the emblem of supreme power. It was decreed that all bargains or agreements, written upon paper without this, should be good for nothing.



A STAMP.

10. These bits of blue paper were called *stamps*, and were furnished by the king and his advisers, only, for which they charged certain prices. It was thought that, in this way, money could be got from the Americans, because they would have to buy paper with these stamps on, or else have none that was good. This law was called *The Stamp Act*.

11. The Americans were very indignant because of this attempt to get their money. In Virginia, a great Patriot, named Patrick Henry, boldly advised the people to write bargains on whatever paper they pleased, and pay no attention to the Stamp Act.

12. Henry charmed every body by his manner of speaking. When, in the Virginia Legislature, he boldly defied the king and his government, and in speaking of the danger a monarch was in who oppressed his people, he had said, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third"—he was interrupted by persons who cried, "Treason! Treason!" Henry finished by saying—"may profit by their example; if that be treason, make the most of it."

13. All over the country the people were very much excited. The Gospel ministers in their pulpits, speakers at

---

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell of stamps and the Stamp Act? 11, 12. What can you tell about Patrick Henry? 13. What can you tell of the excitement of the people?"

public meetings, and the newspapers, spoke against the Stamp Act. At length men were appointed in several colonies to meet in New York in the autumn of 1765, to talk the matter over, and advise the people what to do.

14. This meeting was called the Stamp Act Congress. Wise men were there ; and they wrote excellent letters to



PATRICK HENRY IN THE VIRGINIA ASSEMBLY.

the king, and to the English Parliament or Legislature, asking both to be just toward the Americans. They also wrote what they called a Declaration of Rights, or a statement of what privileges they were entitled to under the constitution and laws of England and their own charters.

15. After that, the people resolved to have nothing to do with the stamps. Men who had agreed to sell them were insulted everywhere. Many persons formed societies,

---

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell of the Stamp Act Congress?  
15. What did the American men and women do?

and called themselves *Sons of Liberty*. Merchants agreed not to buy any more goods in England, while that act was a law; and the women spun wool and flax, and made cloth for their sons, brothers, and husbands to wear, rather than have them buy it in England.

16. The king and his ministers soon saw that they had made a serious mistake. The great William Pitt [page 98] was in Parliament, and advised the repeal of the Stamp Act; that is, its being done away with. His advice was taken. The Act was repealed in the spring of 1766, and there were great rejoicings in England and America.

17. The advisers of the king, not knowing how to obtain as much money as they wanted, determined to try some other way to get it from the Americans. So they induced Parliament (for only Parliament had the right to do it) to decree that the Americans should pay to the king's officers so much money whenever they bought any tea, paper, glass, painters' colors, etc., brought in ships. This, as we have observed, was called levying duties.

18. Knowing that the Americans would object to this, they sent soldiers over here to compel the people to pay the money. This made the Americans very indignant. They could not bear the thought of being enslaved by soldiers; and, in each colony, the Legislature took the matter in hand. In the year 1768, almost every Colonial Assembly had declared that Parliament had no right to tax the Americans, unless Americans were allowed to become members of Parliament. Their opinion was, that

#### TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION IS TYRANNY.

19. But the king, his advisers, and Parliament, did not

---

QUESTIONS.—16. What was done in England? 17. What else was done to get money from the Americans? 18. What was done to force the Americans to pay money? What did the Assemblies do? 19. What did the king and Parliament do?



mind what the Americans said. They sent officers over to collect the duties, or tax, and threatened to send more soldiers, if the Americans did not become quiet, and pay the money without murmuring.

20. Those proud men in England did not know what bold, and wise, and good men they were dealing with, or they would never have acted so foolishly and wickedly. The tax-gatherers came, but they were treated with contempt. In Boston they were insulted, driven from their houses, and compelled to take shelter in a fort in the harbor.

21. General Gage, who was made governor at Montreal, [verse 63, page 104], was then in Halifax with an army. He went to Boston, with many soldiers, to compel the people to pay the duties, or tax. It was a quiet Sabbath morning in September, 1768, when he marched into the town, with flags flying and drums beating, as if it had been a conquered city. But the people, strong in the right, felt no dismay.

22. The colonial governors became more proud, insolent, and overbearing, when they saw the determination of the English government to force the Americans into obedience. They treated them as rebels, and in every way the Americans were irritated beyond endurance. Yet they acted manly and respectful, while they were firm and unyielding.

23. Even the children partook of the boldness of their fathers and mothers. On one occasion, in Boston, the soldiers had beaten down some snow-hills which the boys had raised. This had been done before, and the lads determined not to endure it longer. The larger boys held a meeting, and several of them were appointed to see General Gage about it.

---

QUESTIONS.—20. What then happened, and why? 21. What can you tell about Gage's arrival in Boston? 22. How did the governors act? 23, 24. What did soldiers do to Boston boys?

24. When the boys entered Gage's room, he asked why so many children had called upon him. "We come, sir," said the tallest boy, "to demand satisfaction." "What!" said the general, "have your fathers been teaching you rebellion, and sent you to exhibit it here?" "Nobody sent us, sir," replied the boy, while his eyes flashed, and his cheeks reddened, at being accused of rebellion.

25. The lad then told Gage how the soldiers had broken down their snow-hills, and how, when they complained, they were called young rebels. "Yesterday," he continued, "our works were destroyed the third time, and we will bear it no longer." The general's heart was touched by the noble courage of the boy. "The very children here," he said to an officer at his side, "draw in a love of liberty with the air they breathe." He then assured the boys that their snow-hills should not be touched again.

26. The soldiers in New York and Boston became very insolent, and they and the citizens frequently quarreled. In the latter city, on the 5th of March, 1770, a quarrel took place, and that evening there was a riot. Three citizens were killed, and four were dangerously wounded, by the soldiers.

27. The excitement was very great. All the bells of the city were rung, and no doubt there would have been a great deal of bloodshed, if the governor had not promised justice to the people. They demanded the instant removal of the troops from Boston. This was done, and quiet was restored. The "Boston Massacre," as it was called, was long remembered.

28. The advisers of the king, seeing how much trouble there was in America, concluded to take the tax off of every thing, except tea. This was continued, because they wished to assert the *right* of Parliament to tax the Americans.

---

QUESTIONS.—24, 25. What can you tell about brave Boston boys?  
26. What sad event happened in Boston? 27. What then was done?  
28. What change in taxing was made?

29. But the Americans would not be satisfied so long as a single tax remained without their consent. It was not the *amount* of the tax that they cared for, but they denied the *right* to tax them at all. Seeing that the Americans were firm, and would not buy goods in England, to the great hurt of the merchants there, the ministers tried to put the tax upon tea in another shape, which will be noticed presently. But it would not do. "No taxes, without our consent," said the Americans.

30. In North Carolina the home taxes were very heavy, and the people joined in the arrangement of measures to regulate affairs. These associations were in the back settlements, and the members were called Regulators.

31. The governor, finding his officers could not collect the taxes there, marched to these districts himself, with a body of soldiers. The Regulators now prepared to meet him, and in May, 1771, they had quite a battle near the Allamance creek. The Regulators were defeated, and several leaders were hanged. From that time the people hated the rule of the king and his governors.

32. A year later, the people of Rhode Island showed their defiance, by burning a vessel belonging to the king, which was in Narraganset Bay to enforce the collection of taxes. On a starry night in June, 1772, Captain Whipple and more than sixty men went in a boat and set the vessel on fire. Three years afterward, the Captain of a British vessel wrote to the leader — "You, Abraham Whipple, on the 17th of June, 1772, burned his majesty's vessel, the *Gaspè*, and I will hang you at the yard-arm. JAMES WALLACE."

Whipple immediately replied :

---

QUESTIONS.—29. How did the Americans feel about it, and act?  
 30. What can you tell about the Regulators in North Carolina?  
 31. What can you tell about a battle there? 32. What occurred in Narraganset Bay in 1772? What three years afterward?

“TO SIR JAMES WALLACE :

“SIR,—Always catch a man before you hang him.

“ABRAHAM WHIPPLE.”

Whipple was neither caught nor hanged.

33. The English merchants complained because the Americans would not buy goods of them while there was a tax upon tea. So the king's advisers thought to please the Americans by making an arrangement with the East India Company, that brought all the tea from China, to sell it at a less price to the Americans. The tax, also, was made very small.

34. Now, thought Lord North (the chief minister) and the East India Company, all will be well ; and ship after ship was filled with tea and sent to America. But all was not well. There was yet a TAX upon tea, though ever so small, and the Americans would not yield in the least.

35. The ships arrived, but nowhere was the tea allowed to be sold. In most places it was not permitted even to be landed. In Boston the people had resolved beforehand what to do, when any tea-ships should arrive. The captains were to be ordered to leave the harbor at once, and if they refused, their cargoes were to be destroyed.



FANEUIL HALL.

36. Two ships came to a Boston wharf in cold December, 1773, and would not leave. The people held a great meeting in Faneuil Hall ; and at dusk, a large number of men, dressed like Indians, went on board the vessels, broke open every chest of tea, and cast the contents into the water.

QUESTIONS.—33. What can you tell about English merchants and the king's advisers ? 34. What can you tell about tea sent to America ? 35. What can you tell about the tea that came ? 36. What happened in Boston and its harbor



So, as they said at the time, "Boston harbor was made a great tea-pot!"

37. When news of this event reached England, the king, his advisers, and the Parliament, were very indignant, and they resolved to punish the people of Boston by prohibiting vessels from leaving or entering that harbor.

38. On the 1st of June, 1774, General Gage came to Boston as Governor of Massachusetts, and troops were ordered there to carry out the measures for punishing the people. Of course, all business was stopped, and the inhabitants suffered very much. But the patriots all over the country sent them food and other necessities, and a considerable amount of money was sent to them from London. So they managed to get along, though it was hard work.

39. The patriots of Massachusetts were not discouraged, even in the midst of their sufferings. They knew themselves to be right, and remembered that

"Thrice armed is he who has his quarrel just."

They relied upon God for guidance and aid, and they found that reliance to be not in vain.

40. It was now perceived by the patriots all over the land, that war was probable, and they prepared their minds for it. Certain men, called Committees of Correspondence, were chosen in each colony, to give and receive information. Those of Massachusetts seemed to be the most active of all, for persecution gave them strength.

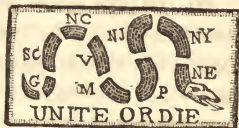
41. Among these, no one was more active than Samuel Adams, who, from the beginning, had been one of the

---

QUESTIONS.—37. How did the king and his friends feel and act? 38. What can you tell of Gage, and the punishment of the Boston people? 39. What can you say of the Massachusetts patriots? 40. What can you tell about Committees of Correspondence? 41. What can you tell about Samuel Adams and other Massachusetts patriots?

firmest opposers of the king and his advisers. At his suggestion the patriots of Massachusetts met in council, and sent forth an invitation to all the colonies, to choose men to meet in a general Congress, and consult upon what was best to be done.

42. The idea of UNION now filled all minds and hearts. The newspapers were also filled with it ; and some of them had at their head the representation of a snake in parts, each part representing a separate colony. Underneath it were the words, *Unite, or Die*—that is, the colonies must form a Union, or become slaves.



SNAKE DEVICE.



CARPENTERS' HALL.

43. The whole country was much excited during the summer ; and before August, delegates for the Congress were appointed in all the colonies but Georgia. These met in Carpenters' Hall, Philadelphia, on the 5th of September, 1774. That assembly is known as the First Continental Congress.

44. Peyton Randolph, a bold patriot of Virginia, was chosen President of the Continental Congress, and Charles Thomson of Pennsylvania was appointed Secretary. Then it was that a union of the colonies was really commenced, and the first grand step was taken toward forming our noble Republic, THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

45. That Congress continued fifty days. The members

---

QUESTIONS.—42. What can you tell about the union of the people ? 43. What can you tell about the First Continental Congress ? 44. What can you tell about the meeting of the Congress ? 45. What did the Congress do ?

showed so much wisdom and firmness, that the greatest men of Europe were astonished. When they separated, they agreed to meet again on the 10th of the next May, unless, in the meanwhile, the king and his advisers and the Parliament should treat the Americans justly, when there would be no necessity for such meeting.

46. But the king and Parliament were not just to the Americans; and before the 10th of the next May, British troops and armed patriots had commenced THE REVOLUTION—the old War for Independence, which we will now consider.

---

## SECTION II.

### FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.

[ 1775. ]

1. England, Scotland, Wales, and Ireland, formed one kingdom, called Great Britain. Hereafter, we will say *Great Britain* instead of *England*, and the *British* instead of the *English*.

2. During the summer of 1774, the Americans made preparations for war, for they saw no disposition in the king and Parliament to be just. They made guns and gunpowder, practiced military movements, and formed themselves into companies to be ready for battle at a minute's warning. On this account they were called Minute-men.

3. General Gage became alarmed. He was afraid the people of Massachusetts would attack him and his troops, so he built a strong wall of wood, and stone, and earth, across a narrow strip of land that connected the ground

---

QUESTIONS.—46. What can you say of the king and Parliament?  
1. What countries formed Great Britain? 2. What did the Americans do in 1774? 3. What did General Gage do?

on which Boston stood, with the main land. This was called Boston Neck. Gage placed cannons there, to keep the patriots away from the city.

4. Early in September the news went abroad that the British were firing cannon-balls upon Boston, from their ships. The Minute-men, from every direction, started for Boston, and within two days full thirty thousand of them were on their way. The story was not true ; but General Gage was made to see how dangerous it would be to provoke the people.

5. The patriots felt their strength, and paying no attention to what Gage said, ninety of them met at Salem, formed what they called a Provincial Congress, and taking all matters of government into their own hands, they prepared for war in earnest. This was the first really independent government ever formed in America.

6. When the king and his advisers heard of these things, they were at their wits' ends. Dr. Franklin was then in London, and he begged them to treat the Americans well. Good men in Parliament did the same, but they would not listen. They went right on doing more and more to make the Americans dislike them.

7. When the trees budded, in the spring of 1775, there were three thousand British troops in Boston, sent there to frighten the Americans. Yet they were not frightened. They saw that they must fight for freedom, or be slaves, and they resolved to defy the fleets and armies of Great Britain.

8. With all these soldiers, Gage felt strong. Hearing that the patriots were collecting powder and balls, muskets and provisions, at the village of Concord, he sent a party of

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about the gathering of the Minute-men? 5. What can you tell about an independent government? 6. What was done in England? 7. What can you tell about British troops and Americans? 8. What did Gage do?



soldiers, on the night of the 18th of April, to seize them and carry them to Boston.

9. These troops reached Lexington at daylight. A good many Minute-men were watching for them there. A sharp fight took place, and eight of the patriots were killed, and the rest driven away. This was the beginning of the old War for Independence.

10. The British now marched on to Concord to seize the Stores, and there they had another fight with the patriots. They soon found that the Minute-men were coming from all quarters, so they turned and fled to Boston as fast as their feet could go. When they got there, they found that two hundred and seventy-three of their number had been killed or wounded.

11. When the news of this bloodshed became generally known, there was great excitement among the patriots all over New England and elsewhere. Hundreds of people, armed and unarmed, started for Boston ; and, before the 1st of May, full twenty thousand men were there, building fortifications to keep the British army from coming out of the city. Among them were Putnam, Stark, and other brave soldiers, who had learned the art of fighting in the French and Indian War.

12. In other parts of the country the *Sons of Liberty* took bold steps. They seized powder, cannons, muskets, and other things ; told the royal governors to leave the country as soon as possible, and plainly said to the king and Parliament, "Now we are ready to fight for our freedom. Send on your soldiers as soon as you please."

13. At Fort Ticonderoga, the British had a great many cannons and much powder. Early in May, some Con-  

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell of a fight at Lexington? 10. What of a fight at Concord and flight to Boston? 11. What happened when these fights were known? 12. What did the people do? 13. What can you tell about Ticonderoga and Crown Point?

ticut, Massachusetts, and Vermont people, led by Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, went across Lake Champlain one night, and just at daylight rushed into that fort, in spite of the sentinels.

14. Ethan Allen was a rough, but very brave man. He called to the British commander, who was in bed, to give up the fort. The commander came to the door, and said, "By what authority do *you* demand it?" "By that of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress!" shouted Allen. The commander thought the authority sufficient, and gave up the fort. Crown Point was taken two or three days afterward, and the cannons from Ticonderoga were conveyed to Boston, and used against the British.

15. Toward the close of May, several war-vessels came from England with troops and those famous soldiers, Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne. There were then twelve thousand British troops in Boston, and many large war-ships were in the harbor.

16. Feeling very strong, Gage now determined to march out and attack the Americans. The patriots determined that he should not; and on a warm and starry night in June, a thousand of them, under the great patriot, Colonel Prescott, marched silently over Charlestown Neck, to build a redoubt, or sort of fort, on Bunker's Hill, so as to fire cannon-balls directly into Boston. By mistake, in the dark, they fortified Breed's Hill.

17. The British, in Boston, were very much alarmed when they saw this redoubt, almost finished, at dawn of the 17th of June. They had cannons upon Copp's Hill, in Boston, and these, with others in the ships, commenced firing upon the Americans. But the Americans were not harmed.

18. At noon, General Howe, with three thousand British

---

QUESTIONS.—15. Who and what now came from England? 16. What can you tell about Americans on Breed's Hill? 17. What did the British do? 18. What can you tell of a fight and a burning town?

soldiers, crossed over in boats and attacked the redoubt. The Americans had no cannons, but with their muskets they killed a great many of the British, and compelled them to fall back twice. In the mean while, Charlestown, at the foot of the hill, had been set on fire, and the whole scene was terrible.

19. At last the Americans had used up all their powder.



JOSEPH WARREN.

The British had plenty, and rushing up, they drove the patriots from the redoubt. General Putnam was on Bunker's Hill with troops, but could not get them formed in time ; so the Americans were completely driven away. One of their best men, and greatest patriots, Gen. Warren, was killed.

20. In this battle the Americans lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about four hundred and fifty men. The British lost about eleven hundred. This



BUNKER'S HILL MONUMENT.

QUESTIONS.—19, 20. What more can you tell of the battle of Bunker's Hill ?

conflict, though on Breed's Hill, is called the battle of Bunker's Hill ; and the tall obelisk of granite, 220 feet in height, that stands where the redoubt was, is called the Bunker's Hill Monument.

21. While these things were taking place in New England, the patriots in the other colonies were just as bold and busy. In Virginia, Patrick Henry, who spoke out so plainly about the Stamp Act [page 108], talked still more plainly now ; and he finished a speech in Richmond with these noble words, GIVE ME LIBERTY OR GIVE ME DEATH !

22. Soon after this, Henry marched at the head of a band of Minute-men, and compelled Governor Dunmore, at Williamsburg, to give up some powder he had seized, which belonged to the people. And before the battle of Bunker's Hill, the patriots had driven the royal governor on board of a British war-ship, and he dared not come back.

23. In the back country of North Carolina, the patriots had also been bold and busy. They came together in May, and declared themselves free and independent of British rule. In New York, South Carolina, and Georgia, they seized powder and guns, drove away the royal governors and declared themselves ready to fight for freedom.

24. While the people were thus excited, the SECOND CONTINENTAL CONGRESS met at Philadelphia. The wise and patriotic men collected there, said to the king, in substance, "Be just, and we will lay down our arms, and be your best friends. But know, O king, that we have counted the cost of war, and find nothing so dreadful as slavery. Be just, or we will fight your fleets and armies until we become a free people."

25. The Congress did not wait for the king's answer,

---

QUESTIONS.—21. What was done in other colonies? 22. What can you tell about Patrick Henry? 23. What did the Patriots do elsewhere? 24. What can you say about the Second Continental Congress? 25. What important thing did Congress do?



but wisely prepared for war. They appointed George Washington, the brave soldier who was with Braddock, twenty years before [page 92], to be the commander-in-chief of the continental armies, with several great Patriots as his chief assistants.



WASHINGTON TAKING COMMAND OF THE ARMY.

26. Washington went immediately to Cambridge, near Boston, and there, under the shadow of a fine elm-tree, yet standing, he took the command of the army on the 3d of

QUESTION.—26. What can you tell about Washington and the army?

July. That army was made up of all sorts of people, with all sorts of dresses, and all sorts of weapons. Washington began at once to put them in good condition; and all that summer and autumn, and the next winter, he was employed in efforts to drive the British from Boston. He finally succeeded, as we shall notice presently.

27. Ticonderoga and Crown Point being in their hands, the Americans resolved to take possession of Canada. An army was collected and placed under the command of two great Patriots and soldiers, Generals Schuyler and Montgomery.

28. This army went down Lake Champlain to its foot, in August, and attempted to take the fort at St. John's, on the Sorel, away from the British. They failed, went back



GENERAL SCHUYLER.

to an island, and there encamped. General Schuyler was soon afterward taken sick, and went to his home in Albany, and Montgomery became the sole commander.

29. Toward the close of September, Montgomery attacked St. John's, but it was more than a month before he got possession of it. In the meanwhile, Colonel Ethan Allen, with a small party, attempted to take Montreal, but were taken themselves. Allen was sent to England a prisoner, in irons, and did not gain his liberty for a long time.

30. Colonel Bedel, of New Hampshire, and a few troops, took the fort at Chamblee, at about the same time; and soon after that, Montgomery was marching as a victor,

---

QUESTIONS.—27. What did the Americans now do? 28. What can you tell about the Americans on Lake Champlain? 29. What was done in Canada? 30. What else was done there?

toward Montreal. That city was given up to him on the 13th of November, 1775.

31. Winter was now coming on. Montgomery heard that Arnold was approaching Quebec through the wilderness, and, with a little more than three hundred poorly clad troops, he hastened toward that city to join him, for winter frosts were binding the rivers, and blinding snow was covering the country.

32. That march of Arnold with a thousand men, through forests and swamps filled with snow and ice, was wonderful. He went through the wilderness from the Kennebec river to the St. Lawrence, and was at Point Levi, opposite Quebec, on the 9th of November. He crossed the river, and, with his shivering little army, stood upon the Plains of Abraham [see page 103], and demanded the surrender of the city. He was unsuccessful; and then he marched up the St. Lawrence twenty miles, where he met Montgomery on the first day of December.

33. The united troops now marched directly for Quebec; and for three weeks, in the midst of terrible snow-storms, they tried to get possession of the city. Montgomery finally determined to force his way into that strong-walled city, through the gates, and for this purpose he separated his little army into four divisions.

34. In this attempt, while leading one of the divisions, the brave Montgomery was killed. After a combat for several hours, many of the Americans were made prisoners, and Arnold led the remainder



GENERAL MONTGOMERY.

---

QUESTIONS.—31. What did Montgomery do? 32. What can you tell about Arnold and his men? 33. What can you tell of the Americans at Quebec? 34. What can you tell of Montgomery, and of the Americans in Canada?

away, for there appeared no hope of taking Quebec. Before the middle of June following, the Patriots were driven entirely out of Canada.

35. The Patriots of Virginia were more successful. After Governor Dunmore was driven away from Williamsburg, he collected a large number of Tories and negroes, and commenced destroying the property of Whigs in lower Virginia. The Minute-men soon gathered to oppose him; and after a severe battle at the Great Bridge, near the Dismal Swamp, they drove him to the British ships at Norfolk. In revenge, he burned Norfolk on the 1st of January, 1776; but he was soon afterward compelled to leave the country and go to England.

36. Among the Minute-men of Virginia were brave ones from Culpepper county, whose flag bore the picture of a rattlesnake, with the words, *Don't tread on me*. It said, "Don't tread on me, I have dangerous fangs."



CULPEPPER FLAG.

The Americans said to the king, "Don't tread on us; we will fight." It also had the words of Patrick Henry, "Liberty or Death!"

37. When the war had fairly commenced, two distinct parties appeared, one called *Whig*, the other *Tory*. Their names came from England, where *Tory* meant one who was a friend of the king, and *Whig* one who was opposed to him. All through the Revolution, there were many here who were the friends of the king. These were called **TORIES**, and the Patriots were all called **WHIGS**.

---

QUESTIONS.—35. What can you tell of events in lower Virginia?  
 36. What can you tell of Culpepper flag? 37. How do you explain the meaning of *Whig* and *Tory*?



## SECTION III.

## SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1776.]

1. During the summer of 1775, the Continental Congress made every preparation to continue the war. Money was wanted, and enough of gold and silver could not be had. So they issued Bills of Credit, as they were called ;



A BILL OF CREDIT, OR CONTINENTAL MONEY.

that is, a kind of paper-money similar to our bank-bills, but printed on coarse paper, and very rough in appearance.

2. These bills the people used freely, expecting to get gold and silver for them after the war. But they did not. Congress issued cart-loads of them. They answered the purpose for the time, but the people lost a great deal by them, for before the war was ended they became worthless.

3. The Congress also ordered some war-vessels to be

QUESTIONS.—1, 2. What can you tell about Continental money?

3. What did Congress do? and what can you tell about privateers?

built; and they gave private persons permission to arm vessels and take any British ships they might find. These were called Privateers, and soon there were a great many of them on the ocean.

4. Great Britain also made large preparations for war against the Patriots. Besides mustering thousands of soldiers and preparing a great many war-vessels, for the purpose, seventeen thousand German soldiers were obtained, mostly from Hesse Cassel. On that account, all of the soldiers from Germany were called Hessians. They were hired by the British and sent over to help make the Americans slaves.

5. When Washington heard of these preparations, he resolved to do his best to drive the British from Boston immediately. He then had fourteen thousand soldiers. He fired many cannon-balls upon the city from time to time; and finally, on the evening of the 4th of March, 1776, he sent a strong party to build embankments for cannons on Dorchester Heights, now in South Boston.

6. When the British saw this at daylight, they were alarmed, and Howe ordered troops to go and drive the Americans away. A storm prevented their going. So the Americans completed their works, and the British now saw plainly that the sooner they left Boston the better it would be for them.

7. Howe sent word to Washington, that if he would let him and his troops leave Boston quietly, in his ships, he would do so. Washington consented; and on Sunday, the 17th of March, 1776, the British and a great many Tories left Boston forever. The American army then took possession of it, to the great joy of the people, and its harbor was opened for business.

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What preparations did Great Britain make? 5. What can you tell about Washington at Boston? 6. What did the British perceive and do? 7. What can you tell about the British leaving Boston?

8. Before this, a great British soldier, Sir Henry Clinton, left Boston with troops, in ships. Washington thought he might be going to attack New York, so he sent a brave officer, General Charles Lee, to raise troops in Connecticut and go to that city.

9. Clinton heard of this some way, and thought it best not to go into New York harbor. He sailed southward to attack Charleston, and Lee went on by land to watch his movements.

10. When Howe sailed from Boston, Washington thought that he, too, might be going to attack New York. He left troops enough to keep Howe from coming back, and then went to New York himself with quite a large army, and built forts there and on the Hudson river.

11. Clinton was joined on the coast of North Carolina by several battle-ships, commanded by a great sea-warrior named Parker, and early in June they all reached Charleston harbor. The Patriots there were prepared for them, and General Lee arrived soon afterward.

12. Within that harbor is an island, on which the Patriots had a fort nearly completed. Five hundred soldiers, under Colonel Moultrie, and many cannons, were placed in it, when they saw the British fleet coming. While Clinton and his men were trying in vain to reach the fort by land, several of the battle-ships came in and fairly rained heavy iron cannon-balls upon it.



COLONEL MOULTRIE.

13. These balls did little harm, for the fort was made of soft palmetto logs. One of the balls cut down the staff on

QUESTIONS.—8, 9. What can you tell about Clinton and Lee? 10. What did Washington do? 11. What was done on the Carolina coast? 12. What can you tell of a fort near Charleston? 13. What can you tell of a brave young soldier there?

which the patriot flag was fastened. The flag fell outside of the fort. A brave young man, named Jasper, climbed down in the midst of the flying cannon-balls, picked up the flag, fastened it upon the ramrod of a cannon, and then placed it on the fort in such a way that it kept flying during the whole battle!

14. This fight lasted almost ten hours. The Patriots fired cannon-balls from the fort upon the British ships, so fast and continual, that they were half cut in pieces, and more than two hundred of the people in them were killed or wounded. The ships were dreadfully shattered and their sails torn. They got away from the fort as quickly as possible. The troops went on board the best vessels, and all sailed away, sorry enough that they ever went there.

15. The Americans now felt certain that the British would never be just toward them, and that there was no use in trying to be friends with the king and Parliament. So they thought much of being a free and independent people, without a king, and at liberty to choose their own rulers. First the Patriots in one colony, and then those in another, met together, and talked it over; and finally the Continental Congress took the matter into consideration.

16. In June, 1776, Richard Henry Lee, a great Patriot of Virginia, arose in Congress and declared that the United



STATE HOUSE.

Colonies were, and ought to be, free and independent states, and then asked other members to think about it, and talk it over. They did so for almost a month, and on the 2d of July Congress agreed to it. Congress then

---

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell about the battle? 15. What did the Americans now feel and do? 16. What was done in Congress?



held its meetings in the State House, Philadelphia, and John Hancock was president.

17. Five great Patriots, named Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston, had written a long paper, giving reasons why the Americans ought to be free ; and this, with the words of Richard Henry Lee, is called THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

18. This Declaration was agreed to on the *Fourth of July, 1776*. So, every year, on that day, at sunrise and sunset, we ring the bells and fire the guns ; and at noon, soldiers are generally out with their flags flying, and drums beating. The boys, full of glee, let off crackers from morning till night, and in the evening splendid fire-works are shown, to the delight of every body. This is as it should be, for that was the birth-day of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, which soon became a Nation.

19. The people rejoiced when the Declaration was made known to them, and wished to put out of the way every thing that reminded them that they had been ruled by a king. In the city of New York was a fine statue, or figure, of King George on horseback. It was made of lead, and covered with gilding. When the people and soldiers there heard of the Declaration of Independence, they pulled down that leaden statue, and made bullets of it, with which they fought the British.

20. At about the time of the Declaration of Independence, General Howe came in ships with many troops, and landed on Staten Island, near New York. A month afterward, Sir Henry Clinton came there from the South, with many more troops ; and two or three weeks later, a large

---

QUESTIONS.—17. What can you tell of a Committee of Congress ?  
18. What more can you say about the Declaration of Independence ?  
19. What can you tell about a statue of King George ? 20. What occurred on Staten-Island ?

number of the hired Hessians [verse 4, page 128], came and landed there.

21. Washington was in New York with the American army. He sent a large number of them over to Brooklyn, to build a fort and oppose the British, for he believed that they would come to the attack of New York by that way. And so they did. They crossed the Narrows between Long and Staten Islands, marched up, and near Brooklyn they had a severe battle with the Americans. Many of the Patriots were killed and made prisoners, and the British were the victors.

22. The Americans called their strong work at Brooklyn, Fort Putnam. In and near that the remainder of their army were collected, while the British prepared to attack them again. Early on the third morning after the battle (the 30th of August), they all escaped across the East river in boats, under cover of a heavy fog, much to the astonishment and mortification of the British. When the fog rolled away, and the sunlight burst upon Brooklyn and New York, the last boat-load of Patriots had reached the city shore.

23. The Americans were not allowed to remain much longer in New York. Washington saw that the British army was a great deal stronger than his, and that Howe was preparing to cross over and attack his troops. So he prudently left the city, marched to the lofty ground on the Hudson, where Fort Washington had been built, and there formed a strong camp on what was called Harlem Heights.

24. Howe tried to drive the Americans from this position, but could not. Then he resolved to get in their rear, and went up the East river to Westchester county, with a

---

QUESTIONS.—21. What did the Americans and the British do? 22. What can you tell about the escape of the Americans? 23. What can you tell about the Americans leaving New York? 24. What can you tell about events in Westchester county?

large number of troops, where he was joined by some fresh Hessians. Washington was wide awake, and went into Westchester, too, when both armies marched up the river Bronx to White Plains, watching each other.

25. The two armies had a pretty severe battle at White Plains on the 28th of October. The Americans were defeated, and fled to the hills of North Castle. A few days afterward, Washington crossed the Hudson river with most of his army, and joined General Greene at Fort Lee, on the Jersey shore, nearly opposite Fort Washington.

26. Less than a fortnight afterward, many Hessians [verse 4, page 128], and some English soldiers, attacked Fort Washington. They took possession of it [Nov. 16, 1776], after losing a thousand men, and then made more than two thousand Americans prisoners. These, with others, were confined in the loathsome prisons and prison-ships at New York. The most famous of these prison-ships was the *Jersey*, in which thousands of Americans died.

27. Two days after the capture of Fort Washington,



THE JERSEY PRISON-SHIP.

Lord Cornwallis (an eminent English soldier), with six thousand troops, crossed the Hudson, drove Washington and his army from Fort Lee, and for three weeks chased them across New Jersey to the Delaware river at Trenton.

28. The American soldiers were then not more than three thousand in number, and these were wretchedly clad, and half-starved. They crossed the icy Delaware on the

---

QUESTIONS.—25. What can you tell of a battle at White Plains? 26. What can you tell of a battle at Fort Washington, and of prisoners? 27. What occurred in New Jersey? 28. What can you say about the American soldiers?

8th of December, and sat down, almost in despair, upon the Pennsylvania shore.

29. But the mind of Washington was full of hope, because he knew that he was engaged in a right cause, and fully believed that God would help the Americans. The Congress, sitting at Philadelphia, knew that the British might easily cross the Delaware, and come and take that city. They were much alarmed, and fled to Baltimore, after vesting Washington with the powers of a Dictator.

30. The British did not cross the Delaware, but formed small camps near it. The Hessians were encamped at Trenton, and Washington resolved to attack them. Christmas was approaching. The Germans always make that a holiday, and Washington very wisely concluded that, after drinking and sporting all day, they would sleep very soundly that night.

31. So, on Christmas night [1776], in the midst of a storm of hail and rain, Washington, with more than two thousand men, and several cannons, crossed the river among the floating ice, eight miles above Trenton, but not in time to reach that town before daylight. The Americans marched in two divisions. One was led by Washington, and the other by General Sullivan. The Hessians were greatly surprised. Their commander was killed, several of his soldiers were slain and wounded, and more than a thousand were made prisoners, and taken to the Pennsylvania shore the same day.

32. This was indeed a brilliant affair. There was great rejoicing among the Patriots all over the country; and the Congress made Washington a Dictator, and told him that he might do just what he liked, for six months. The

---

QUESTIONS.—29. What can you say about Washington and Congress? 30. What can you tell about the Hessians at Trenton? 31. What can you tell about crossing the Delaware, and battle at Trenton? 32. What was the effect of the battle at Trenton?



British were very much astonished and frightened at the boldness of the Americans ; and many true Patriots, who felt afraid when Washington was chased across New Jersey, now came forward and joined his army.

33. Washington now determined to drive the British out of New Jersey. He crossed the Delaware again, with the whole of his little army, and formed a camp at Trenton. The British and Hessians joined, and formed a camp at Princeton, only ten miles off. Such was the situation of the two armies at the close of 1776.

---

## SECTION IV.

### THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1777.]

1. The British Parliament acted very strangely. They seemed to think that the Americans were nobodies, and that they might kick and cuff them as they pleased. They appeared not to know how bravely the Patriots had acted against almost thirty thousand choice British troops and fierce Hessians ; and no doubt they thought that the whole flurry, as they called it, would soon be over. They refused to do justice to the Americans, and prepared to send more soldiers over to fight them.

2. The Continental Congress, on the contrary, acted wisely and promptly. They knew how the French hated the English, so they sent Silas Deane to France, to ask the French king to help the Americans against his old enemy. King Louis was glad of the opportunity, and promised great things. Then, after the Declaration of Independence was over, Congress appointed Silas Deane, Dr. Frank-

---

QUESTIONS.—33. What did the two armies do ? 1. How did the British Parliament think and act ? 2. What did Congress do ?

lin, and Arthur Lee, to be ministers or agents for the Americans, in France.

3. The Congress had, long before, perceived the necessity for laws to bind all of the colonists together. In 1775,



DR. FRANKLIN.

Dr. Franklin wrote such laws, and others did so afterward. Early in 1777 these were agreed to. They were called ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION, or solemn agreements between the different colonies to act as one State, in many things. These lasted ten years, but did not work well, because the States did not really have a National Government.

4. Let us see what the American and British armies near the Delaware were doing at the beginning of the year 1777. Washington had five thousand soldiers at Trenton on New Year's day. On the 2d of January, Cornwallis came from Princeton with a great many troops to attack them. He arrived at evening, and concluded to wait until the next morning, when he thought it would be very easy for him to conquer the Patriots.

5. The Americans were in great peril, and hardly knew what to do. Cornwallis was very strong. The ground was so soft that the cannons could not be dragged away, and they could not get across the Delaware. Toward midnight the wind blew cold, and the ground was frozen. Washington then left some men to keep his camp-fires burning, and, with his whole army and cannons, he marched off to Princeton before daylight.

6. Cornwallis was astonished and mortified, when he

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about Articles of Confederation? 4. What occurred at Trenton? 5. What did the Americans do? 6. What can you tell about Cornwallis?

found Washington had escaped. Just then he thought he heard the rumbling of thunder in the direction of Princeton. He listened, when one of his officers said, "Thunder, on a clear morning in mid-winter ! No, no ; to arms, general ! Washington has out-generaled us, and is attacking our troops at Princeton. You hear his cannon. Let us fly to the rescue !"

7. He was right. Just at sunrise, on that keen frosty morning, the Americans attacked a large party of British soldiers at Princeton, and, after a severe battle, became victors. But they lost General Mercer, one of the bravest and best Patriots in the army. He was wounded, taken to a house near by, and there died a few days afterward.

8. Cornwallis had hastened to Princeton, but when he arrived not a patriot soldier was there. Washington had led them on to a resting-place many miles distant, and then they all encamped among the hills of East Jersey, at Morristown, until spring.

9. From Morristown, Washington sent out parties to attack the British and armed Tories, and finally drove them out of New Jersey, except at two places. Then Congress returned to Philadelphia ; and every body now began to think that the Americans would surely drive all the British and Hessians back to Europe.

10. It was almost June [1777] before the two armies commenced the summer campaign in earnest. The most of the British were in New York and its neighborhood ; and General Howe sent out strong parties of soldiers to do mischief to the Americans in New Jersey, on the Hudson river, and in Connecticut.

11. One of the meanest of these expeditions was under

---

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you tell of a battle at Princeton ? 8. What followed ? 9. What did Washington and Congress do ? 10. What can you say about the summer campaign ? what was first done ? 11. What can you tell of Tryon's expedition ?

General Tryon, who had been Governor of New York. He went up Long Island Sound with British and Tory soldiers [April], landed between the villages of Norfolk and Fairfield, and, marching into the country, he burned Danbury. He also treated the innocent inhabitants very cruelly.

12. The Patriots of Connecticut soon gathered, under those brave soldiers, Arnold, Wooster, and Silliman, and drove the invaders back to their ships [April 27], after a sharp battle at Ridgefield. There General Wooster was killed. Tryon lost altogether about three hundred men before he escaped to his vessels.

13. The Americans concluded that they could play at that game, too. So toward the close of May, a party under Colonel Meigs crossed Long Island Sound to Sag Harbor, and burned a dozen British vessels there ; also the store-houses and their contents, and carried off ninety prisoners, without losing one of their own men.

14. The British held possession of Rhode Island for several months. Prescott, the commanding general there, was a tyrant, and treated the people very badly. One night in July, Colonel Barton of Providence, and some others, went across Narraganset Bay unseen, and carried off Prescott from his quarters, without allowing him to dress. These things made the British act a little different, for they saw that the Americans were expert players at their own game.

15. At the close of May, 1777, Washington had almost ten thousand troops with him in New Jersey. For a long time he was perplexed to know what the British army was going to do. It had been arranged in England, that the British should take possession of the country on the Hudson river and Lake Champlain, and thus separate New England from the other colonies.

---

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell of Connecticut Patriots ? 13. What did the Americans do ? 14. What occurred on Rhode Island ? 15. What can you tell about the British plans ?



16. To accomplish this, a large army, under General John Burgoyne, assembled at St. John's, at the foot of Lake Champlain, in June, and General Howe was to send troops up the Hudson. But Howe seemed hardly to know what to do, and his movements perplexed Washington. He went into New Jersey, and tried to draw the Americans into battle. Then he retreated; and finally, with all of the British troops in New Jersey, he crossed over to Staten Island, and encamped there.

17. In June and July, Burgoyne went up Lake Champlain, a victor, taking Crown Point and Ticonderoga from the Americans [July 12], without much trouble, and spreading terror all over the North. At the same time, the British troops in New York seemed to be preparing to go up the Hudson. All at once eighteen thousand of them, with Howe at their head, went on board ships commanded by Howe's brother, and sailed southward.



GENERAL LA FAYETTE.

18. Washington now saw plainly that Howe was proceeding to capture Philadelphia. He immediately marched to that city with the main portion of the Patriot army, and there he was first visited by La Fayette, a young and brave soldier who had just come from France to fight for the Americans.

19. La Fayette was a noble young man. He had heard how the Americans were striving for freedom, and he was anxious to help them. He had just married a beautiful girl, and his friends tried to keep him at home. But she, generous as he, cheerfully consented to his departure, and he

---

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell of the movements of Burgoyne and Howe? 17. What further can you tell about British troops? 18. What did Washington perceive and do? 19. What can you tell about La Fayette?

came here full of love for the Americans. He joined the army under Washington, and was one of the firmest friends of the cause.

20. Howe went up the Chesapeake Bay, because the Americans had obstructed the Delaware river. He landed near the head of it [Aug. 25], and proceeded toward Philadelphia. Washington was marching to meet him. On the Brandywine creek, several miles above Wilmington, the two armies had a very hard battle [Sept. 11] for a whole day, and the British were victorious.

21. In that battle, La Fayette was badly wounded in his leg, and many good and brave men were lost. Full twelve hundred of the Americans were killed, wounded, or made prisoners, and the British loss was about eight hundred.

22. Washington and his thinned troops fled to Philadelphia, followed by the British. The Congress left that city, and met, first, at Lancaster [Sept. 22], and then at York, where they remained several months. Fearing the British might take their provisions and other things at Reading, the Americans soon left Philadelphia, and marched in that direction. Then Howe encamped at Germantown, four miles distant, and prepared to make Philadelphia the residence of his army for the winter.

23. The Americans had put obstructions in the Delaware, below Philadelphia, to keep ships from sailing up to that city. Near there, on each side of the river, they had also built a fort. These, called Forts Mifflin and Mercer, must be taken from the Patriots, or the British army at Philadelphia could not get provisions by water.

24. Lord Howe's fleet came up to the obstructions, and

---

QUESTIONS.—20. What did the two armies do? 21. What can you tell about the battle on the Brandywine? 22. What can you tell of the movements of the two armies? 23. What can you tell about forts on the Delaware? 24. What can you tell of battles on the Delaware?

two thousand Hessian soldiers attacked Fort Mercer, on the New Jersey side. Soon afterward, British soldiers attacked Fort Mifflin, on the Pennsylvania shore ; and after a brave defence, both had to be given up to Howe's troops at the middle of November. Then the obstructions were removed, and several British ships went up to the city.

25. Toward the close of September, Washington came down the Schuylkill with his whole army, and early on the morning of the 4th of October, he fell upon the British at Germantown. They fought several hours, when the Americans were beaten, with a loss about equal to that on the Brandywine.

26. Washington and his army then marched back, and encamped at White Marsh. Soon afterward the whole British army went into Philadelphia, where they remained all winter. A little later the American army marched to Valley Forge, built huts, and remained there until spring, suffering dreadfully for the want of food and clothing.

27. Let us now see what Burgoyne was doing. The Americans at Ticonderoga, under General St. Clair, were too weak to oppose Burgoyne ; so they fled [July 7, 1777], and he took possession of the fort. A part of Burgoyne's army pursued them, overtook them at Hubbardton, in Vermont, and there a hard fight occurred.

28. Here, again, the Americans were beaten. The same evening, some of the British armed boats, filled with soldiers, came up Lake Champlain to Skenesborough (now Whitehall), and destroyed a great quantity of provisions belonging to the Americans.

29. General Schuyler was the chief commander of all the American troops in the North. These were very few,

---

QUESTIONS.—25. What can you tell about the battle at Germantown ? 26. What did the two armies now do ? 27. What did Burgoyne and his army do ? 28. What battle occurred ? and what happened at Skenesborough ? 29. What was the state of things at the North ?

and most of them were discouraged. Every thing appeared gloomy and disheartening ; and the people began to think that Burgoyne would eat his Christmas dinner at Albany, as a victor, which he had boasted he would do.

30. Schuyler set his soldiers to tearing down the bridges, and felling trees across the roads along which he knew Burgoyne would come. In this way he made the victor's march slow, and enabled himself to go down the Hudson, and collect the people to fight the British.

31. It was the last of July when Burgoyne reached Fort Edward. Then his provisions were nearly gone, and he sent a party of Hessians and other troops to seize some cattle and food belonging to the Americans, which he heard were at Bennington, in Vermont.

32. The people all through that region shouldered their muskets, and, led by the brave General Stark, fought the invaders on the 16th of August [1777], and killed, wounded, and made prisoners, a thousand of them. Burgoyne was now worse off than ever, and hardly knew what to do.

33. A short, sad story forms a part of the history of this campaign. A beautiful young girl, named Jane McCrea, lived at Fort Edward, and had a lover in Burgoyne's army. When that army approached Fort Edward, the lover sent two Indians to bring her in safety to the British camp. She was shot near a spring, by the way. Some said she was killed by the Indians, who quarreled about some rum the lover was to give them ; and others said she was shot by accident.

34. Burgoyne had offered the Indians so much money for every scalp (the hair and skin of the top of the head) they would bring him ; and the people generally believed that the Indians had killed this beautiful young girl for her

---

QUESTIONS.—30. What did Schuyler do ? 31. What can you tell about Burgoyne and his army ? 32. What can you tell of the battle of Bennington ? 33, 34. Tell the story about Jane McCrea.



scalp, which they carried into the camp. The people were indignant because Burgoyne employed the cruel Indians at all; and this murder of an innocent girl made thousands of young men join the American army, to fight and drive away such wicked invaders.

35. While Burgoyne was coming toward the Hudson, St. Leger, a British soldier, was marching from Oswego toward the Mohawk Valley, to attack the Americans at Fort Schuyler, then the name of Fort Stanwix, mentioned in verse 44 on page 100. He led many Indians under a great Mohawk chief, named Brant, and a large number of Tories.



JOSEPH BRANT.

36. The people of the Mohawk Valley were very much alarmed. A large number of them, led by General Herkimer, had a fight with the Tories and Indians at Oriskany, when the former were beaten, and

their brave general was so badly wounded that he died. Then General Arnold, who had been sent to help them, appeared, and St. Leger and his white and red savages fled to Lake Ontario.

37. Burgoyne, very much disheartened, marched down to Saratoga. General Gates was then in chief command of the Patriots at the North, and had a camp at Stillwater, strongly defended by fortifications, built by a brave



KOSCIUSZKO.

---

QUESTIONS.—35. What can you tell about St. Leger and others? 36. What occurred in the Mohawk Valley? 37. What can you tell of the two armies?

and generous son of Poland, named Kosciuszko, who, like La Fayette, had come over the sea to help the Americans.

38. The two armies came to battle on the morning of the 19th of September, and fought hard all day. They battled again on the 7th of October; and ten days afterward, Burgoyne and his whole army, almost six thousand in number, were made prisoners [Oct. 17, 1777], by the Americans.



GENERAL BURGoyNE.

39. This was more than two months before Christmas. Burgoyne dined in Albany much earlier than he expected to, but not as a victor. He was a prisoner, and a guest at the table of General Schuyler, who generously forgave the British commander for burning his house and mills at Saratoga.

40. On the day before Burgoyne's last battle, Sir Henry Clinton and a large number of British soldiers, attacked Forts Clinton and Montgomery, two strong places in the Hudson highlands, belonging to the Americans. They took them both [Oct. 6]; and then many troops went up the river in ships and burned the village of Kingston. They hoped, in this way, to help Burgoyne, but it was too late.

41. When the news that Burgoyne was taken, had spread, there was great joy all over the country. The British were astonished, and the Tories were dreadfully frightened. And when the French King heard of it, he said, in substance, "Well, the Americans help themselves pretty well; I think it will be safe now for me to send soldiers and ships to help them more, and England may say what she pleases."

---

QUESTIONS.—38. What can you tell of two battles? 39. What more can you tell about Burgoyne? 40. What was done on Hudson's river? 41. What was the effect of the news of the capture of Burgoyne?

42. At the close of 1777, the Third Year of the War for independence, the Americans felt very much encouraged, for they had done wonders during the campaign, and the good opinion of the world was on their side.

---

## SECTION V.

### FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1778.]

1. Twenty miles northwest from Philadelphia is a little valley that opens upon a wide plain along the banks of the Schuylkill river. Through it runs a stream on which, before the war for Independence, was a forge, where iron was made into various things. It was called the valley forge, and after a while the whole place was named Valley Forge.

2. To that little valley Washington led the American army from Whitemarsh, through the snow, in cold December. Many of the soldiers were barefooted, and left marks of blood in their tracks in the snow.

3. There the soldiers built rude huts, and spent the dreary winter, thinly clothed and half-starved. They were more willing to suffer so, than to lose their freedom and become slaves to the king and Parliament. At the same time, the British army were enjoying every comfort in Philadelphia. Then it was that the good Washington prayed in secret for God to help his countrymen, and his prayers were heard, and answered.

4. When the snow had melted, and the tree-buds began to open, news came that the French King would send sol-

---

QUESTIONS.—42. How did the Americans now feel? 1. What can you tell about a little valley? 2. What happened there? 3. What can you tell about the American and British soldiers? 4. What news delighted the Americans?

diers and ships to help the Americans. It made them very joyful. Then came news that the king and Parliament would now do right. Then they were still more joyful. But when they remembered how often they had been deceived, they would not believe it. It was well they did not.



GENERAL CLINTON.

5. In the pleasant month of May, General Howe sailed for England, and left the British army in charge of Sir Henry Clinton. They gave Howe a great ball and feast, before he left. At the same time the Americans, who loved freedom better than all such things, were suffering at Valley Forge.

6. News now came that the French King had sent one of his war-sailors, named D'Estaing, with many ships, to take the British vessels in the Delaware. The British naval commander, Lord Howe, was frightened, and left that river as soon as possible. Clinton was also alarmed, and left Philadelphia, with all his army, on the 18th of June. They fled across New Jersey toward Sandy Hook, to get upon Lord Howe's ships that lay at anchor there.

7. When Washington heard of these movements, he put his army at Valley Forge in motion, crossed the Delaware and pursued the British to Monmouth, in West Jersey. There, on one of the hottest days ever known, they had a terrible battle. It lasted from nine o'clock in the morning until dark. It was on the 28th of June, 1778.

8. Fifty soldiers died of thirst that day. One soldier, who was firing a cannon, was shot dead. His wife, a young Irish woman, named Molly, who had been bringing water

---

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about General Howe's departure? 6. What can you tell about the French vessels and the British fleet and army? 7. What can you tell of Washington and a battle? 8. What can you tell about Captain Molly?

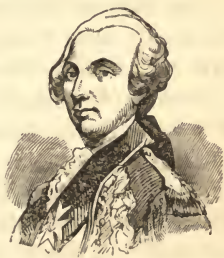


to him, took his place at the gun, and kept firing it all through the battle. Washington was so pleased with her for this, that he gave her the pay of her husband after that, and she wore his soldier-clothes and was called Captain Molly as long as she lived.

9. Washington intended to renew the battle in the morning. But that night, after the moon was down, while he and his wearied soldiers were sleeping, Clinton and his troops marched silently away in the dark, and escaped to Sandy Hook. Then Clinton wrote to his king how valiantly he withdrew in the broad moonlight. One of our poets (John Trumbull) made fun of him by writing thus :

“ He forms his camp, with great parade,  
While evening spreads the world in shade—  
Then still, like some endangered spark,  
Steals off on tip-toe in the dark ;  
Yet writes his king, in boasting tone,  
How grand he marched by light of moon ! ”

10. Washington and his army marched from Monmouth to the Hudson river, and crossed into Westchester county, while the British proceeded in ships from Sandy Hook to New York. Admiral D’Estaing and his war-vessels appeared there in July, but the British ships were safe in Raritan Bay. The water was so shallow between Sandy Hook and Staten Island, that the heavy French ships could not get over and attack those of Lord Howe.



COUNT D’ESTAING.

11. Washington now determined to drive the British

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell about the escape of the British army ? 10. What can you tell about the American army and French fleet ? 11. What was done to drive the British from Rhode Island ?

from Rhode Island, and sent La Fayette and General Greene, with some soldiers, to help General Sullivan, who was there with a small army. D'Estaing also went there with his ships, to help them. Early in August, the Patriot army crossed over to the north end of the island, and the French fleet was in Narraganset Bay, near Newport.

12. Many ships from England joined the fleet of Lord Howe, and with these he sailed to attack D'Estaing at Newport. That war-sailor went out to meet them. A terrible storm arose and greatly damaged the ships of both fleets, so that they did not fight. D'Estaing went to Boston to repair his vessels and left the Americans to help themselves.

13. On the 29th of August a severe battle took place at Quaker Hill, on the north end of Rhode Island, and the Americans were driven away, much disheartened. Many were disappointed and indignant, because they believed that if the French had helped them there, they might have driven the British away.

14. Most of the Six Nations of Indians [verse 11, page 91], fought against the Americans in the Revolution. They were very terrible foes to the white people, especially in the Wyoming, Mohawk, Schoharie, and Cherry valleys, where they murdered men, women, and children, and burnt their houses.

15. Early in July, 1778, a Tory leader, named John Butler, went down into the beautiful valley of Wyoming, in Pennsylvania, at the head of more than a thousand Indians. Most of the strong men were away, in the American army, and these Indians did about as they pleased. The old men and boys fought them, but without much effect;

---

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell about the French and English fleets? 13. What can you tell of a battle on Rhode Island? 14. What can you tell about the Six Nations? 15. What can you tell about Wyoming?

and at evening the next day, the savages went through the valley, burning houses and killing people everywhere. Terrible, indeed, was that *Massacre of Wyoming*, as it was called.

16. While these things were going on, Brant, and some wicked Tories, were at the head of Indians and equally savage white men, in spreading death and terror over the country south of the Mohawk river in the State of New York. Many Patriots and their families were murdered and their property destroyed. So dreadful were the events there for three or four years, that the region was called "The dark and bloody ground."

17. In November, D'Estaing sailed for the West Indies, to fight the British there. Lord Howe sent several of his ships to oppose him ; and as the British power was thus weakened, Sir Henry Clinton concluded it would be useless to try to do much against Washington, for a time. So he sent about two thousand troops, under Colonel Campbell, to attack Savannah, the capital of Georgia.

18. The American soldiers at Savannah were commanded by General Robert Howe. There were only about a thousand of them. These fought nobly, but were finally compelled to give up the city, and flee to the country higher up on the Savannah river. Savannah now became the head-quarters of the British army in the South, and it remained in their possession for almost four years.

19. When the year 1778 drew to a close, the two armies were in a position similar to that which they held toward the end of 1776. The British had gained almost nothing toward conquering the Americans, while the Patriots had discovered their real strength, and had obtained the active

---

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell about Indians and Tories? 17. What can you tell about the movements of the French and English? 18. What can you tell about an attack on Savannah? 19. What can you say about the two armies at the close of 1778?

alliance of the French, one of the most powerful nations in the world. So the Americans had rather the best of it when the campaign of 1778 was ended.

---

## SECTION VI.

### FIFTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1779.]

1. Although the Americans had been successful against the British in 1778, the commencement of 1779 was a gloomy one to them. Their bills of credit, or continental money [page 127], were becoming almost useless, and they could get very little gold and silver; and the promised French army had not arrived. In the South, where the British had now got a foothold, the Patriots were quite weak, and the Tories were very numerous.

2. Washington and the Congress prepared a good plan for the campaign of 1779. It was determined to confine the British to the sea-coast, at the North and at the South, and chastise the Indians and Tories in the interior, or back country.

3. Soon after Campbell took possession of Savannah, General Prevost marched from Florida with troops, and became chief commander of all the British soldiers at the South. General Lincoln was appointed chief commander of the Patriot army there, and early in January he collected quite a large number of troops about twenty miles from Savannah.



GENERAL LINCOLN.

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you say of American affairs at the beginning of 1779? 2. What plan was prepared? 3. What was done at the South?



4. Lincoln was on the South Carolina side of the Savannah river. Campbell marched up the Georgia side, and took possession of Augusta. This enabled the British to have communication with their friends, the Creek Indians, in the west, and also encouraged the Tories. But the defeat of a large body of Tories at about that time, greatly alarmed Campbell, and he prepared to march back to Savannah.

5. Lincoln sent Colonel Ashe, with a quarter of his little army, to drive Campbell from Augusta, and to pursue him down the Savannah river. Ashe followed Campbell some distance, and then halted and formed a camp. There the Americans were attacked by Prevost in the middle of February. A greater portion of them were killed, made prisoners, or scattered. Many of them were drowned while trying to escape across the Savannah river.

6. This was a great loss to Lincoln, yet he was not discouraged. But Prevost felt stronger ; and at the close of April he crossed the Savannah river with two thousand British troops, and a large number of Tories and Creek Indians, and marched for Charleston, the capital of South Carolina. Lincoln, who had been joined by many Americans, after the defeat of Ashe, followed him, to prevent his taking that city.

7. Prevost arrived near Charleston on the 11th of May, and told the Americans that they must give up the city to him immediately, or he would destroy it. They refused, and nobody could sleep in Charleston that night, for they expected every moment to have the British cannons firing upon them.

8. When morning came, the scarlet uniforms of the British were seen across the waters upon John's Island, and

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What occurred on the Savannah river ? 5. What can you tell about Colonel Ashe and his men ? 6. What did Prevost do ? 7. What can you tell about Prevost at Charleston ? 8. What can you tell about the British leaving Charleston ?

not a single soldier of the enemy was near Charleston. The Patriots wondered at this at first, but it was soon explained. Prevost had heard of the approach of Lincoln, and at midnight he started to go back to Savannah, by way of the islands along the coast.

9. At Stono Ferry, just below Charleston, a fight occurred on the 20th of June, in which the Americans got the worst of it. But Charleston was saved, and they were satisfied. Let us now leave the South, and see what was going on at the North all this time.

10. Sir Henry Clinton, at New York, sent out armed parties to plunder the people in Connecticut and other places. In March, Governor Tryon went to Greenwich with some soldiers, and attacked and scattered some American



GENERAL PUTNAM.

troops, under General Putnam. The general escaped, on horseback, down a steep hill and stone steps, while the British bullets were flying past his head.

11. In May, some British vessels, bearing quite a large number of soldiers, sailed into Hampton Roads and the Elizabeth river, in Virginia. The soldiers plundered the people on both sides of the river, from Hampton to Norfolk. These same ships and troops went up the Hudson river at the close of the month, and took away from the Americans the fort at Stony Point, just below the Highlands.

12. At the beginning of July, the same vessels carried Governor Tryon and more than two thousand soldiers to

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What happened at Stono Ferry? 10. What can you tell about parties sent out by Clinton? 11. What can you tell about British ships and soldiers in the Elizabeth and Hudson rivers? 12. What was done in Connecticut?

the shores of Connecticut, where they plundered New Haven, and burned the villages of East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk. Tryon then boasted that he was very good because he did not burn every house on the New England coast !

13. But the British did not have it all as they pleased. General Wayne, a brave soldier with Washington in the Highlands, led some Americans, at midnight, [July 15], and attacked the fort on Stony Point, while the British soldiers were asleep. They awoke, and fought desperately.

14. Wayne was the victor. Though badly wounded in the head, he wrote to Washington, at two o'clock in the morning, saying, "The fort and garrison, with Colonel Johnson, are ours." The British lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, six hundred men. The Americans lost less than one hundred. This was a brilliant act, and the Patriots everywhere rejoiced.



GENERAL WAYNE.

15. A month after the capture of Stony Point, Major Henry Lee and a few Americans took from the British a fort where Jersey City, opposite New York, now stands. They killed thirty British soldiers, and made one hundred and sixty prisoners. For these brave deeds, the Congress gave both Wayne and Lee a silver medal.

16. The war extended into the wilderness beyond the Alleghany mountains, where Daniel Boone, the great hunter and pioneer, with others, had made settlements. These had been fighting the Indians in Kentucky for several years.

---

QUESTIONS.—13, 14. What can you tell about Stony Point? 15. What other brave deed was done? and what did Congress do? 16. What can you tell about Boone and the Western Wilderness?



DANIEL BOONE.

Further north, in the present States of Indiana and Illinois, the British had forts, and the soldiers there were continually urging the Indians to fight the Americans.

17. The Patriots finally resolved to take these forts away from the British. George Rogers Clarke, and a few brave men, marched through the wilderness against them; and in the course of a few months, the Americans captured the forts, and drove the British away. Then the Indians became peaceable.

18. Now it was determined to chastise a part of the Six Nations, for their cruelties. In the summer of 1779, General Sullivan collected an army in the Wyoming Valley, and marched up the Susquehannah into the country of the Senecas. In the course of a few weeks he destroyed forty Indian villages, and a vast amount of corn, fruit, and garden vegetables. After that the Indians feared and hated the Americans; and they named Washington, who had sent these soldiers there, *The Town Destroyer*.

19. Now let us look southward and see what was going on there. Early in September, D'Estaing, the French war-sailor, already mentioned [verse 10, page 147] came from the West Indies with his ships, and told the Americans he was ready to help them drive the British from Georgia. General Lincoln immediately marched his army toward Savannah, and the Americans and French commenced an attack upon the British works there, toward the close of September.

20. After firing cannon-balls upon the British works day after day for a fortnight, the two armies concluded to climb the walls and banks, and fight their way into Savan-

---

QUESTIONS.—17. What can you tell of Clarke and his men? 18. How were the Senecas chastised? 19. What now happened in the South? 20. What can you tell about the attack on Savannah?



nah. This is called taking a place by storm. The battle was a terrible one, and many brave men were killed. Among these was Count Pulaski, another noble soldier of Poland [verse 37, page 143], who came to help the Americans.

21. Sergeant Jasper, the brave young man who picked up the South Carolina flag on the outside of Fort Moultrie, in Charleston harbor [verse 13, page 129], was also killed there. He was holding a flag made by the ladies of Charleston, when a bullet slew him. His last words were, "Tell Mrs. Elliot I lost my life in supporting the colors she presented to our regiment."

22. All at once D'Estaing said he must leave, or his ships might be injured by the autumn storms. So, just as Savannah was about to be given up by the British, the French all left, and the Americans were compelled to abandon it. Lincoln crossed the river and fled toward Charleston, and the British had it all their own way in the South for some time. The Americans had reason to think very lightly of D'Estaing.

23. During the summer of 1779, La Fayette was in France, and he persuaded his king to send many more ships and a large army to help the Americans, as soon as they could be prepared. When the King of England heard of this, he ordered the British soldiers to leave Rhode Island and go to New York, so that the army in America should not be too much scattered. When they were all there, Sir Henry Clinton took a large number of them and sailed southward to attack Charleston. That event we will consider presently.

24. Thus ended the campaign of 1779. Before we go any further we will consider the sea-fights, or

---

QUESTIONS.—21. What can you tell of Sergeant Jasper? 22. How did the French serve the Americans? 23. What did La Fayette do? What did the British king and soldiers do?

## NAVAL OPERATIONS OF THE REVOLUTION.

25. The Americans were not able to build large ships to fight those of the British, nor did the government have a great many vessels of any kind during the war. But privateers [verse 3, page 127], captured a great many British ships, and in that way helped the cause very much.

26. The first vessels that were built were only gun-boats. They were used by Washington in the harbor of Boston, against the British ships there.



A GUN-BOAT AT BOSTON.

These were made of heavy planks, covered over, and having a big cannon at each end, and small ones on the top, as seen in the picture.

27. The Congress had some small vessels built early in the war, and two or three large ones before its close. The first regular naval officers were appointed late in 1775. Then Esek Hopkins was made commodore, or chief commander, having the same relative rank as a British admiral.

28. Hopkins first went against Lord Dunmore [verse 22, page 122], on the coast of Virginia. Afterward he went to the Bahama Islands, took a town away from the British, and made the governor of one of the islands a prisoner. Then he captured some British vessels on the ocean, and sailed into Narraganset Bay, where his ships were kept a long time by the British, who took possession of Rhode Island.

29. There were several other famous war-sailors at that time, such as Manly, Barry, McNeil, Hinman, and others, and their bold and successful exploits alarmed the British.

QUESTIONS.—25. What can you tell about American vessels? 26. What about gun-boats? 27. What can you say about naval arrangements? 28. What did Hopkins do? 29. What can you say about other war-sailors?

They captured many British vessels. The Americans also lost many. From the beginning to the close of the war, fights went on upon the ocean, as well as upon the land.



JOHN PAUL JONES.

30. One of the greatest sea-fights during the war took place off the eastern coast of Scotland. There was a very brave Scotchman, named John Paul Jones, who fought for the Americans. Dr. Franklin got the French King to help him fit out some new war-ships on the coast of France.

These were placed under the command of Jones, and he went boldly upon the English and Scotch coasts, and attacked the towns and ships there.

31. The vessel in which Jones sailed was named *Bonhomme Richard*, the French words for *Good Man Richard*. Just at evening, on a bright September day in 1779, this ship fell in with a large British war-ship, named *Serapis*; and during that evening, by the light of the moon, they had a terrible battle. They became lashed together, and then fired cannon balls through and through each other.

32. Sometimes the ships were on fire, but the flames were soon put out. The men fought with swords and pistols, first on one ship, then on the other, until many were killed. So they struggled on, in fire and smoke, for three hours, when the British gave up, and Jones became the victor. He took possession of the *Serapis*, and his own shattered vessel began to sink. Not long afterward it sunk to the bottom of the ocean, and Jones went to France with his prize.

---

QUESTIONS.—30. What can you tell about John Paul Jones? 31. What can you tell about a terrible sea-fight? 32. What more can you tell of the battle, and the end of it?

## SECTION VII.

## SIXTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1780.]

1. When General Clinton sailed for Charleston, as we have noticed, he left the few British soldiers in New York in charge of General Knyphausen, the Hessian General. Washington knew how much the Patriots at the South would need help, so, early in the spring, he sent the Baron de Kalb, a brave foreign soldier, with many troops, to assist Lincoln, who was then in Charleston.

2. There being but few soldiers on either side at the North, during the spring and summer of 1780, there was not much fighting there. The conflicts were chiefly in the Carolinas, and these we will now consider.

3. A strong fleet, with two thousand war-sailors, under Admiral Arbuthnot, bore Clinton and his troops to the South. There was a terrible storm on the way, and a great many horses perished. The British finally landed on the islands and shores thirty miles below Charleston, toward the middle of February. There they remained some time, preparing to attack Charleston.

4. General Lincoln was in Charleston with few troops, when the British first landed. That great patriot, Governor Rutledge, immediately commenced arousing the people, and soon large numbers joined Lincoln's army. At the end of March, when the British moved toward Charleston, the Patriots there felt strong enough to oppose them and defend the city.

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What did Clinton and Washington do? 2. Why was there not much fighting at the North? 3. What can you tell of Clinton's voyage southward? 4. What can you tell of the Patriots in Charleston?



5. The Americans had built strong works across Charleston Neck, and placed many soldiers in Fort Moultrie [verse 12, page 129], in the harbor. Near the town was Commodore Whipple [verse 32, page 113], with a small fleet; and along the wharves quite strong defenses had been built.

6. On a lovely morning [April 9, 1780], Arbuthnot sailed into Charleston harbor, with his great ships, and at the same time the British, under Clinton, came nearer the American works on the Neck. Then the British commanders ordered Lincoln to give up his army and the city at once, and threatened to destroy or capture both if he did not. Lincoln refused to surrender, and told them that he was ready to fight.

7. Not long after this, Lord Cornwallis came with three thousand troops, to help Clinton. The Patriots now saw that there was very little chance for them to keep the city, yet they fought on, and suffered on. At length, late on a pleasant evening in May, the entire British army and navy attacked Charleston. The thunders of two hundred cannons shook the city, and at one time it was on fire in five different places. These terrible scenes continued for three days and nights, when the Americans were compelled to give up [May 12, 1780]. Lincoln, his army, and the citizens, five thousand in number, became prisoners of war. The British also took four hundred cannons.

8. The loss of this Southern army was a dreadful blow to the Patriots, and for a while all hope of being free seemed to be lost forever. The British commander sent large bodies of troops into the country, in various directions, and these built some forts. The Patriots, everywhere, were made to tremble, and for a while all was still. Not a Whig

---

QUESTIONS.—5. What preparations had they made? 6. What did Clinton and Arbuthnot do? 7. What happened soon afterward? 8. What was the effect of the loss of Charleston?



GENERAL GATES

was known to be in arms, in South Carolina. Then Clinton and Arbuthnot, feeling that all was safe, sailed for New York with a large number of troops.

9. The silence did not continue long. DeKalb was compelled to move slowly, and did not reach the borders of South Carolina until midsummer, when General Gates took command of the army. The Southern Patriots felt very hopeful when they knew that the conqueror of Burgoyne was coming, and they began to collect in armed bands.

10. Those brave soldiers, Marion, Sumter, Pickens, and Clarke, were soon in motion at the head of troops, and they struck the British and Tories many heavy blows in South Carolina and Georgia. When, in August, Gates and his army marched down from the hill-country toward Camden, the Patriots of that region joined him, and he felt strong.



GENERAL SUMTER.

11. Cornwallis had been left in chief command at Charleston. When he heard of Gates' approach, he hastened to Camden, took the lead of the British there (who were under Lord Rawdon), and marched to meet Gates. Their meeting was unexpected to both. It was at midnight, on a sandy road where it crossed a swamp, seven miles from Camden. Their footsteps in the soft sand were unheard.

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell of other movements? 10. What can you say of brave Southern leaders? What did Gates do? 11. What can you tell about Cornwallis and the meeting of the armies?

12. A skirmish occurred there in the dark, and at day-break a severe battle commenced. The Americans were dreadfully beaten and scattered, and lost a thousand men. The brave DeKalb and other noble soldiers were killed, while General Gates and a few of his troops escaped into North Carolina.

13. This was another severe blow for the Patriots. Within three months, two of their armies in the South had been destroyed, and now the armed bands of Sumter and others were scattered to the winds. All seemed hopeless ; and yet the Patriots were not without hope.

14. Cornwallis foolishly thought that harsh treatment would make the Patriots silent, so he commenced oppressing them in every way. But it made them despise him and hate British rule more than before. The Patriots became very indignant, and resolved to strike again for home and freedom, as speedily as possible.

15. Thinking South Carolina conquered, Cornwallis marched into the North State. At the same time he sent out armed parties to frighten the Whigs and encourage the Tories. One of these parties, under Major Ferguson, was attacked at King's Mountain by the Patriots early in October, 1780, and after a severe battle the British were beaten, with the loss of a thousand men and fifteen hundred guns. This was as bad a blow for Cornwallis as the battle near Bennington [page 142], was for Burgoyne.



LORD CORNWALLIS.

16. While these things were going on in the upper

---

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell of a battle? 13. What misfortunes had befallen the Americans? 14. What did Cornwallis do? What was the effect? 15. What can you tell of the British movements, and a battle? 16. What can you tell about Marion and Sumter?

country of the Carolinas, the brave Marion was annoying the British and Tories in the lower country, toward Charleston. He was sly, quick, and successful in his movements, and was called *The Swamp Fox*. Sumter, too, who was called *The Carolina Game Cock*, now appeared at the head of brave Patriots, and the injured people everywhere began to lift up their heads. Cornwallis perceived danger in this, and marching back into South Carolina, he made his camp between the Broad and Catawba rivers.

17. Here we will leave the South, for a time, to observe important transactions at the North.

18. Very few military movements occurred at the North during the summer of 1780. Early in June, five thousand British soldiers, under General Mathews, marched into New Jersey, burned a small village not far from Elizabethtown [June 7], and commenced plundering the inhabitants. They were met at Springfield by a body of Americans from Washington's camp at Morristown, and were driven back to the coast.

19. A fortnight afterward, Clinton having arrived, joined Mathews, and marching toward Morristown, tried to bring Washington out to fight. These also were met by the Americans, under General Greene, at Springfield [June 23.] A severe skirmish ensued, when the British, after setting fire to the village, fled to Elizabethtown, and across to Staten Island.

20. Early in June, an event caused the Americans to rejoice greatly. A large French fleet arrived at Newport, with six thousand soldiers under a great leader, the Count de Rochambeau. The British now became shy, and did not send out any more marauding expeditions. In fact, they began to think it dangerous to go out to fight at all.

---

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you tell of events in New Jersey? 19. What did Clinton do? What occurred at Springfield? 20. What made the Americans rejoice? How did the British feel?



At that time Clinton was hoping to accomplish all he wished, through the wickedness of an American officer. That officer was the bold soldier, but bad man, Benedict Arnold.

21. General Arnold was a quarrelsome man, and had made many Americans his enemies. He was also deeply in debt ; and, in an evil hour, he resolved to desert his countrymen, do them all the harm he could, and join the British army. For this purpose he obtained the command of the strong post of West Point, in the



BENEDICT ARNOLD.

Hudson Highlands. This he agreed to give up to the British for fifty thousand dollars and the office of General in the British army.

22. Sir Henry Clinton employed Major Andrè, a young man, and Adjutant-General of his army, to bargain with Arnold. Late in September, 1780, while Washington was in Connecticut having a talk with the French officers, Andrè went up the Hudson in the British sloop-of-war *Vulture*, and on the shore near Haverstraw he met Arnold. When they had arranged all their plans, and Andrè was about to return, the *Vulture* had disappeared. Some Americans on shore had fired cannon-balls upon the vessel, and it had moved down the river some distance to avoid them.

23. Andrè was now compelled to cross the river above, and go to New York on horseback, down the east side of the Hudson. He was in disguise, and went on well until he had arrived at Tarrytown, where three young men stopped him. When they discovered that he was a British officer, they searched him, and in his boots they found papers which showed all the wicked intentions of Arnold.

---

QUESTIONS.—21. What can you tell about General Arnold? 22. What can you tell about Major Andrè? 23. What can you tell about the capture of Andrè?

24. Arnold, at his house in the Highlands, heard of the arrest of Andrè, and, kissing his wife and babe, left in haste, fled down the river in a boat, to the *Vulture*, and escaped. Major Andrè was tried, condemned, and hanged as a spy, a few days afterward, though every body pitied him. If the Americans could have caught Arnold, they would have hanged him, and let Andrè go.

25. The names of the young men who arrested Andrè



CAPTOR'S MEDAL.

were John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart. Because of their useful act, the Congress voted them each a silver medal, and two hundred dollars a-year as long as they lived. We may admire Benedict Arnold the *soldier*, but

we must ever despise Benedict Arnold THE TRAITOR.

26. And now another year of the war drew to a close. The Patriots were still firm and hopeful. Great Britain had lost much blood and money in attempts to make slaves of the Americans, but to little purpose. Yet the king and Parliament went blindly and wickedly on. They declared war against Holland, and made great preparations for fighting the Americans the next year. We shall soon see how it turned out.

## SECTION VIII.

### SEVENTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1781.]

1. The noble character of the American soldiers was shown at the beginning of 1781. They had suffered every

---

QUESTIONS.—24. What can you tell of the escape of Arnold and death of Andrè? 25. What can you tell about the captors of Andrè? 26. What can you say about the British troops and Government? 1. What can you tell about American soldiers?

want. The continental money, in which they had been paid, was worthless ; and Congress was not prompt in paying them any thing. They had asked for relief in vain. Finally, more than a thousand of them left Morristown, on the 1st of January, and started for Philadelphia, to compel Congress to do something for them.

2. General Wayne went after them. He first tried to coax them to go back. Then he threatened them, and pointed his pistol at the leader. They were firm, and said : " We love and respect you, but if you fire, you are a dead man. We are not going to the enemy ; on the contrary, if they were now to come out, you should see us fight under your orders with as much alacrity as ever."

3. Their patriotism was fairly tried. At Princeton, some men, sent by Sir Henry Clinton, tried to hire them to join the British army. They were indignant, and handed these men over to General Wayne, to be punished. Congress, at this time, satisfied them, and they returned to duty. When they were offered a reward for giving up the British spies to Wayne, they nobly refused it, saying, " Our necessities compelled us to demand justice from our government ; we ask no reward for doing our duty to our country against its enemies !"

4. Other signs of discontent in the army, at this time, made Congress more active in providing money for the use of the troops. Taxes were imposed and cheerfully paid. An agent was sent to Europe to borrow money ; and a national bank was established in Philadelphia, under the management of Robert Morris, which did good service in furnishing money to buy necessaries for the army. Mr. Morris also used his private fortune for the purpose very freely.

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell of General Wayne and the soldiers? 3. What noble thing did the soldiers do? 4. What did Congress do?

5. While the American soldiers were showing their patriotism in the midst of sufferings, Arnold, the traitor, was in lower Virginia with many British and Tory troops, injuring his countrymen as much as he could. He burned a great deal of public and private property at Richmond [Jan. 5, 1781], and plundered in other places. After doing as much mischief as he could, from January to April, Arnold returned to New York. The Americans tried hard to catch the traitor ; and La Fayette went to Virginia with troops for that purpose. But Arnold was very cautious, for he knew his neck was in danger.

6. On one occasion Arnold had a Virginian as a prisoner. "What would the Americans do with me if they should catch me?" he asked the Virginian. The prisoner boldly and promptly replied, "They would bury your leg, that was wounded at Quebec, with military honors, and hang the rest of you." Arnold asked him no more questions.

7. Let us now look toward the Carolinas, where most



GENERAL GREENE.

of the fighting was done during the campaign of 1781. General Greene, the great soldier from Rhode Island, went there in the autumn of 1780, and took command of the little southern army then gathering. A part of it he sent to Cheraw, eastward of the Pedee river. The remainder, about a thousand strong, under

General Morgan, were encamped near the junction of the Pacolet and Broad rivers. Cornwallis and his army were between the two.

---

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell of Arnold in Virginia? 6. What can you tell about one of his prisoners? 7. What can you tell about Greene at the South?



8. Cornwallis was just preparing to march into North Carolina again. Unwilling to leave Morgan in his rear, he sent Colonel Tarleton, a fiery British horseman, to capture or scatter the Americans. At a place among the mountains, called the Cowpens, Tarleton and his men, and Morgan and his brave followers, had a severe battle for two hours. The British were beaten and scattered, and many of them were made prisoners.

9. At the close of the battle, Morgan started for Virginia with his prisoners. Cornwallis heard of it, and marched forward in haste to head off Morgan. He was a little too late ; Morgan had crossed the Catawba before Cornwallis arrived. Feeling sure of him, as he did of Washington at Trenton [verse 4, page 136], Cornwallis waited till morning. A heavy rain during the night filled the river to the brim, and the British could not cross until Morgan had joined Greene on the Yadkin.



GENERAL MORGAN.

10. Now a wonderful flight and pursuit commenced, which extended from the Yadkin to the Dan. Greene and his army were pursued by Cornwallis and his troops full two hundred miles. Three times the rivers were filled by rains after the Americans had crossed, and kept the British back ; and in this the Patriots saw the hand of a kind Providence. Greene and his army finally crossed the Dan [Feb. 3, 1781], into Virginia, and Cornwallis, tired of the chase, marched slowly back into the interior of North Carolina.

11. Greene remained in Virginia only long enough to

---

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell about Cornwallis and the battle at the Cowpens? 9. What can you tell about Cornwallis and Morgan? 10. What can you tell of a retreat and pursuit? 11. What did Greene then do?

allow his troops to rest, when he crossed the Dan to prevent Cornwallis gathering the Tories in North Carolina. He sent forward Colonel Henry Lee, one of the best officers in the army, who scattered the Loyalists or Tories, and made all afraid.



COLONEL HENRY LEE.

12. Greene now felt strong, and determined to attack Cornwallis. On the 15th of March, 1781, the two armies met near Guilford Court-house, and fought one of the hardest battles of the Revolution. Both suffered dreadfully in killed and wounded. The Americans lost four hundred, and the British full six hundred. There was no victory for either. Cornwallis had rather the worst of it, and hurried off, with his shattered army, to Wilmington, while Greene prepared to enter South Carolina, and attack the British, under Rawdon, at Camden.

13. Greene encamped upon a hill, within a mile of Rawdon's troops at Camden, on the 19th of April. A week afterward the British fell upon him suddenly, and a very sharp battle occurred. Each party lost about the same number of men, killed and wounded. Colonel Washington, a brave soldier in the Southern army, took fifty of the British prisoners, and with these, and all his cannons, Greene retreated a few miles and encamped.

14. The two armies were now about equal in strength, and Lord Rawdon became alarmed. So he set fire to Camden, and fled down the country to Nelson's Ferry, on the Santee river. This was early in May. Within a week afterward the Americans took possession of four important

---

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell about a battle at Guilford?  
13. What can you tell about a battle near Camden? 14. What did Rawdon do? What did the Americans do?

British posts, and Greene, with his whole army, was marching toward the stronger station of Fort Ninety-Six, between the Saluda and Savannah rivers.

15. It was toward the close of May when Greene commenced his attack on Ninety-Six, and he continued it for a month, when he heard of the approach of Rawdon with a strong army. In the mean while, Lee, Pickens, and



GENERAL PICKENS.

others, had attacked the British and Tories at Augusta. They took possession of that place on the 5th of June, and then hastened to help Greene. Ninety-Six held out, and before the arrival of Rawdon, the Americans all fled beyond the Saluda.

16. Soon after this, Rawdon marched back toward Orangeburg, and Greene became his pursuer. Then crossing the Congaree, the Patriot army marched to the High Hills of Santee, below Camden, and there encamped during a portion of the hot and sickly season. Leaving his troops at Orangeburg, in command of Colonel Stewart, who had come up from Charleston, Rawdon went to that city and embarked for England.

17. In August, many North Carolina troops joined Greene upon the High Hills of Santee ; and at the close of that month, the entire Patriot army crossed the Congaree and marched toward Orangeburg. The British fled down the Santee and encamped at Eutaw Springs. There they were attacked by Greene on the 8th of September, and a very severe battle of four hours occurred.

---

QUESTIONS.—15. What can you tell about an attack on Ninety-Six and Augusta? 16. What can you tell about the movements of the armies? 17. What took place in August and September?

18. Although at the end of the conflict, the British held the field at Eutaw, the battle was really favorable to the Americans. That night the British fled toward Charleston. They had lost about seven hundred men, and the Americans about five hundred and fifty. Both parties claimed the victory. It belonged to neither on the battle-day, but it remained with the Patriots.

19. At this time, Marion, Sumter, Lee, and others, were driving small parties of the British and Tories from place to place, and compelled them finally to abandon the country entirely. They fled into Charleston, pursued all the way by the Americans. At the close of 1781, the British had lost every place at the South excepting Charleston and Savannah, and to these two cities they were confined.

20. Of all these Southern leaders of small bands, Marion was the greatest. He was bold and cautious, and was seldom unsuccessful. For some time his camp was upon an island at the junction of the Pedee and Lynch's creek, amid

the tall cypress-trees from which hung the long moss, like banners.

21. To that camp a young British officer, sent to have a talk with Marion, was taken with his eyes covered. When about to depart, Marion invited him to remain to dinner. To his astonishment, all that was offered were a few roasted potatoes, served upon pieces of bark,



GENERAL MARION.

with a log for a table. Marion assured the young man that, this was rather better fare than he and his soldiers were

---

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you say about the battle at Eutaw Springs? 19. What was being done to the British in South Carolina? 20. What can you tell about Marion? 21. What story can you tell of Marion and a British officer?



accustomed to. The young officer went back to his camp, and declared that such a people could not be, and ought not to be, conquered. He was right.

22. While these things were going on in South Carolina, important events were in progress in Virginia. Cornwallis marched from Wilmington, and at the close of May was at Petersburg, in Virginia, with quite a strong army. La Fayette was then in that State, but his troops were too few to do much against Cornwallis, and that whole region appeared doomed to British rule.

23. Cornwallis felt strong, and he marched to Richmond and beyond, to fight La Fayette. But that brave officer was cautious, and kept out of the way of the British until he was stronger. So Cornwallis, after destroying much property, marched slowly down the James river, followed by the Americans under La Fayette, Wayne, and Steuben. Steuben was a great soldier from Prussia, and taught the American soldiers many useful things in the art of war.



BARON STEUBEN.

24. Cornwallis finally went to Portsmouth, near Norfolk. But Sir Henry Clinton, fearing Washington might attack New York, wished Cornwallis nearer the sea, so that he might come and help him, if necessary. All the British in Virginia then went to Yorktown, on the York river, and there they built strong embankments for cannons, around their camp.

25. Early in July, the French army under Rochambeau came from New England, where they had been almost a

---

QUESTIONS.—22. What was occurring in Virginia? 23. What can you tell about Cornwallis in Virginia? 24. What did Clinton wish? What did the British do? 25. What can you say about the French army? What did Washington do?

year doing nothing, and joined Washington on the Hudson river, in Westchester county. Then Washington resolved to attack the British in New York. But when he heard that a large number of troops had come from England and joined Clinton, and that De Grasse, a great French war-sailor in the West Indies, could not come and help him, he gave it up, and prepared to march to Virginia to drive Cornwallis from that State.



COUNT DE ROCHAMBEAU.

26. Washington managed so to deceive Clinton that the British in New York had no idea that the Americans and French were going to Virginia, until they were some distance on their way. It was then too late to pursue them, so Clinton sent Arnold, the traitor, to desolate the New England coasts. He hoped this would cause Washington to return for their defense.

27. Arnold went willingly, and burned New London, almost in sight of his own birth-place at Norwich. And at Fort Griswold, opposite, he allowed a dreadful massacre of American soldiers, for which there was no excuse. But these cruelties did not check the march of the Allied Armies, as the French and Americans were called.

28. The Allied Armies, twelve thousand strong, arrived at Yorktown on the 28th of September, 1781. Already De Grasse had arrived with his ships, and had battled with British vessels, under Admiral Graves, near the entrance to the Chesapeake Bay. Now the French ships were nearer Yorktown, ready to aid the armies.

29. For many days the Allied troops prepared for a

---

QUESTIONS.—26. How was Clinton deceived? and what did he do? 27. What did Arnold do? 28. What preparations for battle were made? 29. What can you tell about the siege of Yorktown and capture of Cornwallis?



TO THE  
MEMBERS OF THE



general attack upon the British. Then they fired heavy cannon-balls upon every part of their camp, and red-hot shot among the British ships, which set them on fire. Cornwallis saw that all was lost, and tried to escape one night, but could not. Finally, on the 19th of October, he and all his army, almost seven thousand in number, became prisoners to the Americans and French. Clinton, who had just arrived with as many more troops, returned to New York, amazed and disheartened.

30. This was a grand victory. This was the blow that smote to earth all British power in America. The king and Parliament were amazed, and trembled. The Patriots all over this land rejoiced as they had never done before. From churches, legislative halls, from the army and from Congress, went up a shout of thanksgiving to the Lord God Omnipotent, for the success of the Allied troops.

31. The news reached Philadelphia at midnight. The watchmen called out, "Twelve o'clock, and Cornwallis is taken!" Soon lights were seen moving in all houses, and in a few minutes the streets were filled with the excited people. The next morning, the Secretary of Congress read a letter from Washington to that body, telling of the victory. Then the members all went together to a temple of the living God, and there joined in thanksgiving to the King of kings for the triumph. Yet the war was not quite ended.

---

QUESTIONS.—30. What was the effect of these? 31. What occurred in Philadelphia?

## SECTION IX.

## CLOSING EVENTS OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. [1782-1789.]

1. General Greene heard of the capture of Cornwallis, at the close of October, and there was great joy in his army. The Patriots of the South now felt certain of independence and peace ; and Governor Rutledge called a Legislature together. Yet it was necessary to be on the look-out, for there was quite a large British army yet in Charleston, and Tories were plentiful everywhere.

2. Marion kept watch near Charleston ; Greene and his army lay upon the banks of the Edisto river ; Wayne, always wide awake, kept the British in Georgia close within Savannah ; St. Clair, marching down from Yorktown, frightened the British at Wilmington, and made them flee to Charleston ; and Washington kept Sir Henry Clinton and his army close prisoners in the city of New York.

3. The king and Parliament now gave up the American colonies as lost to them forever, and sent word to all the British commanders to stop fighting, and prepare to leave the country. This was in the spring of 1782. On the 11th of July the British left Savannah, and on the 14th of December following they departed from Charleston also. But they remained in New York almost a year longer, until every thing was settled. They finally left on the 25th of November, 1783.

4. Men, called Commissioners, were appointed by the

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you say about the army and people at the South ? 2. What were the American officers in the South doing ? 3. What did the king and Parliament do ? What did the British in America do ? 4. What can you tell about a treaty ?

Americans and the British, to make a bargain, or treaty for peace, between the two. This was completed at Paris, on the 3d of September, 1783, when the king of Great Britain had acknowledged the independence of the United States. Then these States became a new nation upon the earth.

5. The remnants of the American army were then at West Point and neighborhood. These were marched down the Hudson river ; and on the morning when the British were to leave New York, they entered the city, under the command of General Knox, accompanied by George Clinton, the Governor of the State of New York. Then they had the pleasure of seeing their enemies leave our shores forever.



GENERAL KNOX.

6. A few days after this, Washington bade his officers an affectionate farewell, and then went to Annapolis, in Maryland, where Congress was sitting, and gave up his commission, as commander-in-chief of the armies, to the President of that body. From Annapolis he hastened to his home at Mount Vernon (where he had been but once during the whole war), hoping to live there in repose the remainder of his life.

7. Although the war was ended, and peace and independence were secured, there was much to be done to make things prosperous. The Americans had become deeply in debt on account of the war ; and they soon found that the *Articles of Confederation* [page 136] would not answer as the great and enduring laws of the Government.

---

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about the Americans taking possession of New York? 6. What did Washington do? 7. What was to be done after the war?

8. Many of the most eminent men in the country conferred upon the subject of public affairs. Washington was very anxious, for he saw that unless something was done



FRANKLIN IN THE NATIONAL CONVENTION.

very soon much trouble would come. Finally several leading men in different States, chosen by the people, met in convention in Philadelphia, in May, 1787. After deliberating for several weeks, they framed what is known as our

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell about a meeting of leading men? What did they make?



NATIONAL CONSTITUTION, which is the supreme law of the land.

9. That Convention, or Congress, did a great work, and some of the wisest and best men in the world were there. Washington was the President; and the venerable Dr. Franklin, then past eighty-one years of age, was also there. For several days at the beginning, they could not agree, and things went on badly. Then Franklin arose, and proposed that the Convention should be opened every morning with prayer to Almighty God for guidance. All were willing, but as there was no money to pay a minister of the Gospel for the service, it was not done.

10. The Constitution then formed was submitted to the consideration of the people of all the States, and was agreed to by a majority of them. On the 4th of March, 1789, the old Continental Congress ended, and the National Constitution became the Great Law of the Republic. That was the final act of the Revolution. That was the closing work of the GREAT PATRIOTS. Then the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA commenced their glorious career. They were no longer a mere League of States, but united under one Sovereign Government.

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell about the National Convention? What did Dr. Franklin do? 10. What can you say about the National Constitution? What is the conclusion of the matter?

## CHAPTER VI.

## SECTION I.

## THE NATION, OR UNION OF STATES.



WASHINGTON AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. WHEN most of the people of the United States had agreed to the National Constitution which bound them all together, they prepared to choose a governor or president, who should be the chief man of the nation. They all turned toward Washington, who had so nobly led their armies through the War for Independence. He was honored and beloved by every body. So the people, as if with one voice, chose him to be their chief ruler, or the President of the United States. John Adams, another great Patriot, was chosen Vice-President, or the second man in the nation.

2. The new government was to be arranged at New York. Washington left his quiet home at Mount Vernon, on the Potomac, and traveled

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the choice of a President of the United States? 2. What can you tell about Washington and his inauguration?

to that city. Everywhere the people met him and expressed their love ; and at New York he was received by a great crowd of soldiers and citizens. On the 30th of April, 1789, he was inaugurated the first President of the United States—that is, he laid his hand upon the Bible and solemnly promised, in the presence of thousands of people, to do all in his power to be a good and faithful governor. That took place on the balcony of the old Federal Hall in Wall-street. Then commenced

## THE ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON.

[1789-1797.]

3. The National Congress met at the same time. It was made up of Representatives from the different States. These were of two kinds. One kind, chosen by the people for two years, were called *Representatives*. The other kind, chosen by the several Legislatures for six years, were called *Senators*.

4. The Senate and House of Representatives met in separate rooms. According to the Constitution, any decree made by one body could not become a law unless it was agreed to by the other body, and was signed by the President, unless in the case of the refusal of the President to sign it, two thirds of both Houses should agree to it. It was also directed that Congress should meet every year. So each Congress (chosen for two years), has two regular *sessions*, as their remaining together is called.

5. Men were also appointed to assist the President in the management of the affairs of government. One was to do all the talking and writing necessary to keep up a good

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about Congress? 4. What can you tell about the Senate and Representatives? and the meetings of Congress? 5. What can you tell about the President's Cabinet?

understanding with other governments. He was called Secretary of State. Another was appointed to take charge of all matters connected with the army. He was named Secretary of War. And the Secretary of the Treasury was chosen to take care of all money affairs. Then an Attorney-General was appointed as the President's lawyer. These different persons composed the President's Cabinet, and were to be his advisers, the same as the British ministers are the king's advisers.

6. When this matter was settled, Congress, and Washington and his Cabinet worked hard to carry out other plans of government. They took measures to tax the people for every



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

thing they received in ships, so as to get money to pay the government expenses. This required a great deal of care. Fortunately Alexander Hamilton, one of the greatest men in the country, had been chosen Secretary of the Treasury, and he soon arranged an excellent *Revenue System*, as it was called.

7. Next they planned a method for having the laws properly carried out. They appointed five judges, in different parts of the United States, with a chief judge to preside. These formed the Supreme Court; and what they should decree was to be considered law. This was called the *National Judiciary*.

8. Among other things, Mr. Hamilton recommended the establishment of a National Bank. This was done in 1794. Two years earlier, a mint was started, where gold and silver and copper coins were made. And so, after about three years, the *Executive Departments*, the *Revenue System*,

---

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell of the labors of Washington and others? and of the Revenue System? 7. What can you tell about the National Judiciary? 8. What else was done?



and the *Judiciary*, were arranged, and the government of the United States, very much as it is now, was put in motion.

9. Immediately after the Revolution, settlers began to go, in great numbers, into the wild country north of the Ohio river. In 1787, the region now covered by the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin, was put under a governor, and called *The North-Western Territory*. Four years afterward, a new State was added to the old thirteen, by the admission of Vermont.

10. The British yet kept some forts in the north-west. Although peace was agreed to, they continually advised the Indians to fight the Americans; and finally, in 1790, they commenced a war upon the white people in the Ohio country, which continued three or four years.

11. At length General Wayne, who took Stony Point away from the British [page 153], was sent there with an army. He beat the Indians here and there, until they were glad to make peace, and agree to behave themselves. They continued quiet for more than a dozen years after that.

12. The leaders in public affairs did not always agree, and at last two parties were formed. Those who were favorable to giving great power to the government, were called *Federalists*, and those who wished to give more power to the people, were called *Republicans*. The chief leader of the Republicans was Thomas Jefferson, who wrote the Declaration of Independence.

13. At this time the people of France, having become tired of a monarch, had beheaded their king and queen and many other great people. They were resolved to be free, and have a president, as the United States had. But they did not know how to manage such affairs, and a bloody

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell about the Ohio country? 10. What did the British do? 11. What can you tell of an Indian war? 12. What can you tell about two parties? 13. What can you tell about France and a French agent sent here?

time they had. They sent an agent here, named Genet, to persuade our government to help them, as the French had helped the Americans in the late war.

14. The Republicans wished to aid the French, but the Federalists, with Washington and Hamilton at their head, were unwilling to have any thing to do with European affairs. This matter gave the President much trouble. Genet became very impertinent, and, finally, Washington asked the French government to call him home. It was done, and another was sent, who behaved much better.

15. This trouble was just passing away, when another appeared. Congress had put a tax upon whisky made in this country. The numerous whisky-makers in western Pennsylvania declared they would not pay the tax; and arming themselves, they treated the collectors of the money very badly. The President was compelled to send soldiers there in 1795, to enforce the laws, and matters soon became quiet. This is known as *The Whisky Insurrection*.

16. Bad feeling was now growing up again between the Americans and the British. The latter refused to act fairly according to the treaty made at the close of the war, mentioned on page 175. Not wishing to have another quarrel, the President, sent John Jay, an excellent Patriot, to England, to adjust the matter. He did so, and made a new arrangement, which many Americans did not like. They quarreled a great deal about *Jay's Treaty*, but finally they let the subject drop.



JOHN JAY.

The treaty was a good one.

---

QUESTIONS.—14. What trouble occurred, and how did it happen?  
16. What caused bad feeling between the Americans and the British?  
What was done?

17. And now another trouble appeared. It seemed as if the new republic would never be without some difficulty. Its merchants were sending ships to trade in the Mediterranean sea, where there were a great many sea-robbers, who came from Algiers, in northern Africa. They seized and plundered many American ships, and the merchants began to be afraid to send their vessels there.

18. Congress concluded to put a stop to this, and ordered some war-ships to be built and sent there to protect the merchant-vessels. This was the beginning of the American navy ; and another cabinet officer, to assist the President, was soon afterward [1798] appointed, called the Secretary of the Navy. But the United States could not stop these sea-robbers, called pirates, from plundering, until it was agreed to pay them so much tribute-money every year.

19. Washington was twice elected President, which made his term, or administration, eight years. He and his associates had done a great deal of useful work within that time, and every thing was going on smoothly. The people wanted Washington to be President longer, but he refused, and in the autumn of 1796 they were compelled to choose another man for President. The Federalists and the Republicans had a hard contest. The Federalists beat, and chose John Adams for President. Thomas Jefferson, the Republican, was chosen Vice-President.

20. In September, 1796, Washington sent forth to the people a noble Farewell Address, begging them to be careful to preserve the Union, as a Nation ; and, on the 4th of March following, he retired to Mount Vernon,

---

QUESTIONS.—17. What can you tell about trouble in the Mediterranean sea ? 18. What can you tell about the beginning of the navy, and money paid to the sea-robbers ? 19. What can you tell about Washington, and a new election ? 20. What more can you say about Washington ?

where he lived in repose until the 14th of December, 1799, when he died. Then there was mourning in America and in Europe, for a great and good man—a champion of liberty, and a friend of mankind, had left the earth forever.

## SECTION II.

### ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION. [1797-1801.]



ADAMS, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. John Adams, the second President of the United States, was very active in Congress and in Europe during the whole War for Independence. He found trouble to begin with when he became President. France and England were at war; and because of Jay's Treaty with Great Britain, and because the American government would not help the French in their Revolution, the rulers of France were very unfriendly with us.

2. Adams soon called the Congress together to consider the matter. They sent three able men as ministers to the French government, to settle all difficulties, but these were insulted, and could

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Adams and the beginning of his administration? 2. What can you tell about trouble with France?



do nothing. The French were then ruled by a *Directory*, as the government was called, composed of five men.

3. Soon after that, the great Napoleon Bonaparte, then a young man increasing in power, took the government into his own hands. He was courteous and wise, and it was not long before every difficulty was settled, and the danger of a war with France passed away.

4. In the year 1790, a tract of land on the Potomac, ten miles square, and called the District of Columbia, was given to the United States by Virginia and Maryland, and there the city of Washington was laid out the next year. A building called the Capitol, for Congress to meet in, was commenced. In the year 1800 that city was made the National capital, and President Adams went there to reside.

5. In the autumn of 1800, the people elected another President. Then, again, the Federalists and Republicans had great strife. This time the Republicans were the victors. Thomas Jefferson was elected President, and Aaron Burr Vice-President.

---

### SECTION III.

#### JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION. [1801-1809.]

1. Thomas Jefferson, the third President of the United States, was also active during the whole War for Independence, in Congress, and as Governor of Virginia. He, too, was an agent for his country in Europe, but not until after the war.

2. Like Washington, Mr. Jefferson held the office of President eight years. He was inaugurated on the 4th of

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about Bonaparte? 4. What can you tell about the federal city and capitol? 5. What can you tell about an election in 1800? 1. What can you tell about Jefferson? 2. What did Jefferson do?



JEFFERSON AND HIS RESIDENCE.

March, 1801. He turned a great many Federalists out of office, and put his Republican friends in; and he began many and great changes in the management of public affairs.

3. In the autumn of 1802, Ohio became a State of the Union. The next year, a vast region west of the Mississippi river, called Louisiana, was purchased of the French for fifteen million dollars. This was divided. The southern portion was called the *Territory of New Orleans*; the northern part was called the *District of Louisiana*.

4. The sea-robbers in the Mediterranean [page 183], were yet giving the merchants and traders a great deal of

trouble, and the United States Government resolved not to pay any more tribute-money every year to them. Then Tripoli, one of the robber-governments, declared war against the United States. Jefferson at once sent strong ships there to protect our merchant-vessels, and soon there was fighting.

5. One day the United States frigate *Philadelphia*, commanded by Captain Bainbridge, a brave war-sailor, struck on a rock in the harbor of Tripoli. Bainbridge and

---

QUESTIONS.—3 What can you tell about Ohio and Louisiana?  
4. What can you tell about a war with Tripoli? 5. What happened to an American ship, and her officers and crew?

his officers were made prisoners, while his men were all made slaves, and suffered dreadfully for a long time.

6. Early in 1804, Lieutenant Decatur, who was afterward one of the best men in the navy, sailed into the harbor of Tripoli with a small vessel, on a dark night, drove the Tripolitans from the *Philadelphia*, set the vessel on fire, and escaped without losing a man. This bold act alarmed the Bashaw, or governor of Tripoli.

7. The Bashaw was a usurper. His place belonged to his brother Hamet, whom he had compelled to flee to Egypt. Hamet readily joined the Americans against his brother, and at the head of a number of Mohammedan soldiers, he accompanied some seamen, under Captain Eaton, an American, across the deserts from Alexandria in Egypt. They captured a Tripolitan town on the Mediterranean, and were marching directly for Tripoli, when the terrified Bashaw made peace with the American agent there. So the war was ended.



AARON BURR.



STEPHEN DECATUR.

8. In the summer of 1804, Aaron Burr and Alexander Hamilton had a duel with pistols. Hamilton was killed, and after that Burr was generally detested. He had a great desire to be a leading man ; so, in the spring of 1806, he went beyond the Alleghany mountains, where an enterprising and restless people

---

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell of the brave Decatur ? 7. What more can you tell about the war with Tripoli ? 8. What can you tell about Aaron Burr ?

were fast gathering, and took measures to raise a large number of troops, to go, as he pretended, and seize the Spanish territory of Texas and the neighboring States.

9. Many good and brave men joined Burr in this, because, on account of the conduct of the Spaniards, they thought it right. But he was finally suspected of an intention to divide the Union, make a separate government of the Western States, and become its President. He was arrested, and tried in 1807; but it could not be proved that he had any such intentions, and they let him go.



ROBERT FULTON.

10. This same year a most important thing occurred. Robert Fulton, an American portrait painter, and a good mechanic, who had invented machinery for driving boats by steam, placed some in a vessel on the Hudson river. The boat went from New York to Albany in thirty-six hours, "against wind and tide," to the

great astonishment of every body. This was the commencement of successful steamboat navigation in the world.

11. And now there was great trouble in Europe. There was war almost everywhere. Bonaparte had made himself Emperor of France, and three of his brothers kings of other countries. All the continent of Europe was in arms against him, and so was Great Britain. The United States would have nothing to do with either party; and so, for a long time, our merchant-vessels were



FULTON'S STEAMBOAT.

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell of his scheme, and its end? 10. What can you tell of Fulton and steamboats? 11. What can you tell of troubles in Europe? How did the Americans act?



allowed to trade in all parts of the world. and make much money.

12. A change came. England and France, in their endeavors to injure each other, closed many ports, and both parties seized American vessels. Our commerce was very soon ruined, for we had few large ships to protect it. Congress had ordered swarms of gun-boats, but these were hardly sufficient for a coast-guard.



A FELUCCA GUN-BOAT.

13. These things caused bitter feelings toward Great Britain, which was increased by the commanders of British vessels claiming the right to go on board of American ships, and search for their runaway sailors. This claim became the chief cause of war between the United States and Great Britain.

14. One pleasant day in June, 1807, the British ship *Leopard* attacked the American ship *Chesapeake*, off the coast of Virginia, because her commander would not allow his vessel to be searched for runaway sailors. The *Chesapeake* was badly beaten, and was compelled to go into port at Old Point Comfort, near Hampton, where Fortress Monroe now stands.

15. This outrage made the Americans very indignant. President Jefferson issued a decree, that every British vessel should immediately leave America, and not be allowed to return until satisfaction was given by the king and Parliament, for the outrage.

16. In the mean while, England and France did all they could to injure each other, while the British would not

---

QUESTIONS.—12. What change came? and what was done? 13. What was the effect? 14. What can you tell of an attack on an American ship? 15. What was then done? 16. What did the English, French, and American Governments do?

give up what they called their rights—that was, full liberty to search American vessels for runaways. Finally, when the Congress met in December, a law was made, forbidding all vessels, of every kind, leaving the American shores, and ordering all American sailors abroad to come home immediately, and prepare for expected war. This was called *The Embargo Act*.

17. Merchants, and all others connected with ships, very much disliked the Embargo, for it ruined their business. Nor did it seem to do much good, for the English and French went right on, as before, and paid very little attention to what the Americans said or did. So, early in the spring of 1809, the Embargo law was done away with, and another was made, forbidding all trade with Great Britain or France until they should act more justly.

18. Mr. Jefferson had now been President eight years, and his place was filled by James Madison, of Virginia, who was also a Republican. George Clinton, of New York, was chosen Vice-President.

---

## SECTION IV.

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION. [1809-1817.]

1. James Madison, the fourth President of the United States, was also active in the Revolution. Though a very young man, he was a member of the Continental Congress, and was one of the warmest friends of the National Constitution.

2. Mr. Madison became President on the 4th of March, 1809. He chose wise men for his cabinet, or his advisers.

---

QUESTIONS.—17. What more can you tell about the Embargo? 18. What can you tell of a new election? 1. What can you say about Madison? 2. What did Madison do?

On account of the continued troubles with Great Britain and France, he called the Congress together a few weeks afterward, to consider these matters.

3. King George, who was the same man that ruled Great Britain when the Revolution commenced, almost forty years before, was disposed to be just toward the Americans, but, as was often the case, he had bad advisers, and he was sometimes crazy, and did not know what he did. He sent a man over here to settle all difficulties; and things would have gone on smoothly had not his advisers prevented the king from approving of what his agent had done. For awhile the Americans believed that the British government would act justly, and they commenced trading with British merchants, as before.

4. But France and England continued to act very unkindly toward the Americans. They allowed their warships to seize and plunder our merchant-vessels, and in every way acted as enemies, while they pretended to be our friends. Great Britain even sent her naval vessels to our coasts, to seize American ships and send them to England as prizes.



MADISON AND HIS RESIDENCE.

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you say about King George and his advisers? 4. What was done? How did France and England continue to act?

5. On one occasion, at about the middle of April, 1811, the British ship *Little Belt* attacked the American ship *President*, off the coast of Virginia. They had a rather severe fight, when the commander of the British ship concluded it was best to stop, and they separated. This event made a great deal of bad feeling.

6. We have seen [page 181] how the British, in the West, a long time before, had caused the Indians to attack the Americans. Now they did the same thing again ; and in the spring of 1811, Tecumtha, a great Indian warrior, united several of the western tribes in a league, in which they agreed to drive the white people from the country between the Ohio river and the Lakes.

7. General Harrison, who was afterward President of the United States, was then Governor of the Indiana Territory. He saw the gathering danger, and caused the people to arm themselves, and prepare for war. In the summer he marched these armed men into the Indian country and for several months he watched the savages closely. Finally, on a dark night early in November, while he was near the banks of the Tippecanoe river, the Indians fell upon him and his men. They had a very hard fight until morning, when the Indians were driven away. The battle of Tippecanoe was one of the severest ever fought with the Indians.

8. The people of the United States now saw that they must either fight or become slaves, as it were, to Great Britain again. They had become prosperous and happy in peace, and very much disliked going to war. But they could no longer endure the insults and the wrongs of the British, and so on the 17th of June, 1812, Congress de-

---

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell of a fight in Chesapeake Bay? 6. What can you tell about the Indians in the West? 7. What did Harrison do? and what can you tell of a battle? 8. What can you say about the people of the United States? What was done?



clared war against Great Britain. This is known as THE WAR OF 1812. or

#### THE SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.

9. Congress made ample provisions for an army, but the navy was so small that it appeared as nothing when compared with that of Great Britain. The Americans had only twelve large war-ships, while the British had over nine hundred of all kinds, yet the Americans went boldly and confidently into the war.

10. Henry Dearborn, who had been in the old War for Independence, was appointed chief commander of the armies ; and Wilkinson, Hampton, Hull, and Bloomfield, who were also soldiers of the Revolution, were chosen to be his chief assistants.

11. General Hull was then Governor of the Territory of Michigan, and when he heard of the declaration of war, he was marching with two thousand troops against the Indians. He was ordered to cross the Detroit river into Canada, and endeavor to take possession of the country. He did so, in July, but he found so many British soldiers and Indians there that he went back again, and remained at Detroit.

12. The British general, Brock, followed Hull across the river, and ordered him to give up the fort and his army at once, or he would take them by force, and let his Indians murder them all. Hull felt sure that Brock could do it, because he believed he had many more men than himself ; so, on the 16th of August, 1812, the army, fort, and all Michigan were given up to the British.

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What did Congress do ? How were the Americans prepared for war ? 10. Who was appointed commander-in-chief ? 11. What can you tell about General Hull ? 12. What can you tell about the surrender of Hull ?

13. This loss greatly mortified and offended the Americans. General Hull was called a coward and a traitor, like Benedict Arnold. In fact, he came very near being hanged. But when the war was over, and it was seen that Hull had acted very humanely in trying to save the lives of his soldiers, and had done the best he could, the people thought better of him.

14. During the summer of 1812, a plan was arranged for invading Canada across the Niagara river. Many troops were sent there; and in October, a large number, under Colonel Solomon Van Rensselaer, crossed over and attacked the British on Queenstown Heights. The battle was very severe. The British were driven off, and their general, Brock, was killed. Others attacked and beat the Americans in the afternoon of the same day, so that both parties suffered dreadfully.



UNITED STATES FRIGATE.

15. Very little more was done on land, during the remainder of the year. But the little American navy did wonders on the ocean. In August, the frigate *Constitution* completely destroyed the British frigate *Guerriere*. Two months later, the sloop-of-war *Wasp*, fought and beat the British brig *Frolic*, off the coast of North Carolina. But the *Wasp* was taken by another British vessel that very afternoon, so the victory did not amount to much.

16. A week after this, the frigate *United States* fought the British frigate *Macedonian* for two hours, and beat her. The *United States* was commanded by the brave Decatur,

---

QUESTIONS.—13. How did the Americans feel about the acts of Hull? 14. What can you tell of an invasion of Canada? 15. What occurred on the ocean? 16. What other conflicts occurred on the ocean?

[verse 6, page 187]. At the close of December, the *Constitution* and *Java* had a terrible fight. Many of the British were killed, and the *Java* was surrendered and burnt. The *Constitution* was then commanded by Bainbridge, the officer who was made prisoner [verse 5, page 186] at Tripoli.

17. These victories made the Americans feel strong and joyful. They had already many privateers [verse 3, page 127] on the ocean, and these were rapidly increased in numbers. During that first year of the war, they captured about three hundred merchant-ships from the British. Encouraged by these things, the Americans prepared for a lively campaign in 1813.

18. During the excitement of the war, Mr. Madison was again chosen President of the United States. George Clinton [verse 5, page 175], had been Vice-President. He died, and Elbridge Gerry, one of the great Patriots of the Revolution, who signed the Declaration of Independence [verse 17, page 131], was chosen in his place.

---

## SECTION V.

### THE SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.

[1813.]

1. The campaign of 1813 opened with the year. The army was in three divisions. The army of the *West* was under General William H. Harrison, at the head of Lake Erie. The army of the *Center* was under General Henry Dearborn, on the Niagara river; and the army of the *North* was under General Wade Hampton, on the borders of Lake Champlain. Sir George Prevost took Brock's place as commander of the British army in Canada.

---

QUESTIONS.—17. How did the Americans feel? What can you tell about privateers? 18. What can you tell about a new election? 1. What can you tell about the division of the army?



GENERAL SHELBY.

2. War began in the West. Thousands of young men went from Kentucky and other western States, to drive the British from Michigan. These were led by the brave old Governor Shelby, who fought valiantly at the battle of King's Mountain, mentioned on page 161.

3. Early in January, General Winchester, with an army of fine young men, marched toward Detroit. Some of them were sent ahead and had some skirmishing. The British General, Proctor, then on the Canada border, crossed over, and attacked Winchester [January 22d], near the river Raisin. After a hard battle, the Americans were compelled to surrender, on promise of being well treated.

4. We remember what Montcalm promised Monro at Fort William Henry, and what sad thing happened. See verses 35 and 36, page 98. A similar thing occurred now. Proctor, who was not half as honorable as Montcalm, went off, without leaving a guard to protect the American prisoners. The Indians soon turned back, murdered a great many of them, set fire to houses, and kept some of the prisoners, to torture them in the woods. This made the Kentuckians very indignant. After that, when they attacked the British and Indians, they would cry out, "Remember the river Raisin!"

5. When General Harrison heard of this massacre, he was at the Maumee rapids. There he built a strong work, and called it Fort Meigs. He remained there with his troops till the 1st of May, when he was attacked by Gener-

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What was done in the West? 3. What can you tell of Winchester and a battle? 4. What wicked thing was done near the river Raisin? 5. What did Harrison do? What happened at Fort Meigs?



al Proctor with more than two thousand British troops and Indians. The savages were led by Tecumtha, the great Indian Chief mentioned on page 192.

6. Proctor and his men were driven away, after five days' struggle. Some Americans pursued them, and were themselves taken prisoners. Then Proctor returned; but on the 8th of May he was compelled to fly to the Canada shore.

7. A large number of Americans, under General Green Clay, remained at Fort Meigs. Toward the close of July, Proctor and Tecumtha, with four thousand men, attacked them. Leaving Tecumtha there, Proctor soon marched swiftly to attack Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky, which was defended by Major Croghan—a brave young man, only twenty-one years of age, having with him only one hundred and fifty men.

8. "Surrender immediately," said Proctor, on his arrival. "Never, while I have a man left," replied Croghan. Then a terrible fight followed [Aug. 2d]. At last the British and Indians, beaten and greatly alarmed, fled in confusion. The shots from a single cannon in the fort, had killed or wounded one hundred and fifty of them, while Croghan lost only one man killed and seven wounded. Tecumtha and the remainder fled in terror from Fort Meigs.

9. The two great lakes, Erie and Ontario, now became places of much interest. In the autumn of 1812, the Americans completed a small fleet on Lake Ontario; and in the summer of 1813, another had been prepared on Lake



MAJOR CROGHAN.

---

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about Proctor? 7. What more can you tell about Proctor and the Indians? 8. What can you tell of the bravery of Croghan? 9. What was done on the lakes?

Erie, and placed under the command of the brave young war-sailor, Commodore Perry.



COMMODORE PERRY.

10. The British also had a small fleet on Lake Erie. This and the American fleet met toward the west end of the lake, on the 10th of September, 1813, and had a very hard battle, which lasted a greater part of the day. Toward evening every British vessel had surrendered to Perry, and then he wrote to General Harrison

—"We have met the enemy, and they are ours!"

11. Harrison was near the western shore of Lake Erie at this time. On the 17th of September, he was joined by four thousand Kentuckians, under the brave old Shelby, [page 196], and they proceeded to attack the British at Malden, on the Canada shore, and to take Detroit away from them.

12. The British and Indians fled into the country in western Canada. A part of the American army took possession of Detroit, and the remainder, more than three thousand strong, led by Harrison, Shelby, and others, started in pursuit of the flying enemy.

13. They overtook Proctor and his army on the river Thames, on the 5th of October. There a desperate battle was fought. Tecumtha was killed, and his followers fled in dismay. Almost the whole of Proctor's army were killed or made prisoners, and Proctor himself barely escaped on horseback.

14. Now all that Hull had lost was recovered, and

---

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell of Perry and his battle? 11. What can you tell of Harrison and Shelby? 12. What can you tell of a pursuit? 13. What can you tell of a battle near the Thames? 14. What was now gained? What did Harrison do?

there was no more war in that region. The people, all over the country, rejoiced. Harrison left Colonel Lewis Cass, with some soldiers, to keep Detroit, and dismissing many of the volunteers (the young men from Kentucky), he marched with the remainder of his army to Niagara, where they joined the army of the center.

15. In February some British troops had crossed the St. Lawrence on the ice, and destroyed much property at Ogdensburg. General Dearborn now determined to attack the British at Toronto (then called York), in Upper Canada. Toward the close of April, quite a large number of troops, in ships commanded by Commodore Chauncey, went to that place, and made a strong attack upon it. The Americans were commanded by General Pike; the British and Indians by General Sheaffe.

16. The British found the Americans too strong for them, so they fled [April 27th], after setting fire to the powder in the fort, which blew it all in pieces. General Pike was so badly hurt by some of the flying stones and timbers, that he died on Chauncey's ship soon afterward, with the captured British flag under his head. The American flag soon floated over the ruined fort at York.

17. A month afterward, the same troops, borne by the same ships, attacked the British Fort George, on the Niagara river. The British were compelled to give up the fort. They fled to Burlington Heights, at the western end of Lake Ontario, closely pursued by the Americans.

18. Sir George Prevost [verse 1, page 195], went to Sackett's Harbor with ships and troops, while Chauncey, with his fleet, was at the other end of Lake Ontario. On the 27th of May, 1813, Prevost landed more than a thou-

---

QUESTIONS.—15. What can you tell about an attack on York, or Toronto? 16. What can you tell of the fight and other events? 17. What did the Americans do on the western shores of Lake Ontario? 18. What occurred at Sackett's Harbor?

sand men. General Brown, a brave soldier, was there, with a few troops, and he called the surrounding inhabitants together as quickly as possible. Prevost soon became alarmed, and fled to his ships in great haste.

19. Now the Americans planned an attack upon Montreal [verse 62, page 104], in Canada. Dearborn was taken sick, and General Wilkinson took his place as chief commander. He collected seven thousand troops on the banks of the St. Lawrence, early in November, and went down that river, expecting to be joined, for the attack on Montreal, by three thousand troops, under Hampton, from Lake Champlain.

20. The British were wide awake on both sides of the river, and the Americans found it very difficult to pass many places, with their boats. Some of them, under General Brown, landed at Williamsburg; and at Chrysler's farm near there, on the 11th of November, the Americans and British had a severe fight. The Americans lost more than three hundred men, and the British about two hundred.

21. When he arrived at St. Regis, Wilkinson found that Hampton would not join him, so he marched his army to French Mills, nine miles in the country, and prepared to spend the winter there. They called the place Fort Covington.

22. While these things were going on, there were some exciting scenes on the Niagara. The Americans burned the Canadian village of Newark. The British were soon revenged. They took Forts George and Niagara away from the Americans, and burned Youngstown, Lewiston, Manchester (now Niagara Falls village), the Tuscarora Indian village, Black Rock, and Buffalo. These places were

---

QUESTIONS.—19. What was planned? and what did the Americans do? 20. What can you tell of a battle in Canada? 21. What did Wilkinson do? 22. What can you tell of events on the Niagara frontier?



all burned in December, and thus ended the campaign of 1813 in the North.

23. We have noticed that the brave Indian warrior, Tecumtha, was killed in battle, in October, 1813. In the spring of that year, he had been among the fierce Southern tribes, to arouse them against the white people. The Creeks listened to him; and late in August they attacked Fort Mimms, on the Alabama river, and murdered almost three hundred men, women, and children.

24. This terrible massacre made all the white people of the South very indignant; and full twenty-five hundred Tennesseans, under General Jackson (one of the greatest of the American warriors), marched into the country of the Creeks. They had battle after battle with the Indians, and always beat them. Finally, toward the close of March, 1814, the last battle was fought at the Great Horse Shoe Bend, on the Tallapoosa river. There more than six hundred Indian warriors were slain, and the power of the Creek nation was crushed forever.

25. Let us now observe what happened on the ocean during 1813. On the 24th of February, the sloop-of-war *Hornet*, commanded by the brave Captain Lawrence, fought and captured the British brig *Peacock*, off the east coast of South America. A few minutes after the *Peacock* gave up, it went to the bottom of the sea.



CAPTAIN LAWRENCE.

26. Captain Lawrence was much praised, and when he came home he was made commander of the frigate *Chesapeake*, a larger vessel. In this

QUESTIONS.—23. What can you tell of Tecumtha? 24. What can you tell about Jackson and Indian battles? 25. What occurred on the ocean in 1813? 26. What can you tell about Captain Lawrence?

ship he sailed out of Boston harbor on the 1st of June, 1813, and that afternoon had a hard battle with the British frigate *Shannon*. The brave Captain Lawrence was shot, and as they carried him below to die, he said, "Don't give up the



LAWRENCE CARRIED BELOW.

ship!" But they were compelled to give it up, for the *Shannon* was the victor.

27. In August, the British sloop *Pelican* took the Amer-

---

QUESTION.—27. What else occurred on the ocean?

ican brig *Argus*. A month afterward, Perry gained his great victory on Lake Erie [verse 10, page 198]. A few days before this [Sept. 5], the British brig *Boxer* had surrendered to the American brig *Enterprise*, after a fight off the coast of Maine. The commander of each vessel was killed, and they were buried in one grave at Portland.

28. During the summer of 1813, the British admiral, Cockburn, attacked, plundered, and destroyed towns and other property on the Chesapeake Bay and vicinity. In March he destroyed the American shipping in the Delaware, and in May he attacked and burned Havre de Grasse, Georgetown, and Frederictown, on the Chesapeake Bay. Then he went into Hampton Roads, at Old Point Comfort [verse 14, page 189], and proceeded toward Norfolk.

29. The Americans on Craney Island, a little below Norfolk, bravely disputed Cockburn's passage [June 22], and drove him back. The British then attacked [June 25] and plundered Hampton until they were tired, for the American soldiers there were too few to drive them away. Then they went South, plundering the Carolina coast all the way to the Savannah river.

30. During 1813, the American frigate *Essex*, commanded by Captain David Porter, made a long cruise in the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, and captured many British whaling vessels. At length, in March, 1814, the *Essex* fought two British vessels at Valparaiso. It was one of the hardest sea-fights during the war. The British were victors; and Porter wrote to the Secretary of the Navy, "We have been unfortunate, but not disgraced."

---

QUESTIONS.—28. What can you tell about Admiral Cockburn? 29. What occurred at Craney Island? What more can you tell about Cockburn? 30. What more can you tell about Captain Porter and his vessel?

## SECTION VI.

## SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE CONTINUED. [1814, 1815.]

1. It was well for the Americans that Great Britain was at war with Napoleon all this time, and was prevented sending ships and soldiers across the Atlantic. In March, 1814, Napoleon was driven out of France, and it was supposed that war would cease. So the British sent fourteen thousand of the great Wellington's troops over to Canada.

2. The American army in northern New York was put in motion at the close of February. It was useless to invade Canada in the St. Lawrence region, so Wilkinson led some of the troops to Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain, and Brown marched with others to Sackett's Harbor.

3. In May, a British fleet and three thousand troops attacked Oswego. After fighting a good deal of the time for two days, they were driven away by the Americans [May 7], with a loss of over two hundred men. They did not venture back again.

4. At about this time, General Brown led his troops to the Niagara river. On the morning of the 3d of July, some Americans, under Generals Scott and Ripley, crossed the river and captured Fort Erie. The next day, the American and British armies had a very severe battle at Chippewa. The British were badly beaten, and both armies suffered very much. The British lost about five hundred men, and the Americans three hundred.

5. The British retreated to Burlington Heights, where

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What was well for the Americans? 2. What did the Americans in northern New York do? 3. What occurred at Oswego? 4. What occurred near the Niagara river? 5. What can you tell about the British army and a battle near Niagara Falls?





GENERAL BROWN.

they were joined by General Drummond. Then they all came back, and attacked Brown and his army at Bridgewater, near Niagara Falls. There, at the close of a hot day, one of the hardest battles of the war commenced [July 25], and continued until midnight, when each party had lost a little more than eight hundred and fifty men. The Americans were again the victors ;

and the next day they took post at Fort Erie.

6. On the 15th of August, Drummond, with five thousand men, attacked Fort Erie, but was driven off, after losing almost a thousand of them. He was compelled to flee to Fort George ; and finally the Americans destroyed Fort Erie, crossed the river, and went into winter quarters at Buffalo and in its neighborhood.

7. In August, General Prevost [verse 1, page 195], with fourteen thousand men, marched from Canada to drive the Americans from Plattsburg. Each party had a small fleet on Lake Champlain, and these and the two armies had a very severe battle at Plattsburg, on the 11th of September. The American army was commanded by General Maccomb, and the navy by Commodore Macdonough.

8. This was one of the most important battles of the war. The British fleet was beaten ; and Prevost, much alarmed, fled, having



COMMODORE MACDONOUGH.

QUESTIONS—6. What else happened on the Niagara frontier? 7. What can you tell of the British and Americans on Lake Champlain? 8. What can you tell of a battle at Plattsburg?

lost in killed, wounded, and missing, twenty-five hundred men. The Americans lost only one hundred and twenty-one. This victory caused great rejoicings all over the country.

9. At about the middle of August, General Ross, one of Wellington's bravest officers, came with a large fleet and six thousand soldiers, and landed on the shores of Maryland. With five thousand men he marched toward Washington city, and, at Bladensburg, he had a battle with the Americans under General Winder.

10. The Americans were too few to oppose Ross, and on the 24th of August, the British entered Washington, burned the Capitol, the President's house, and many private buildings, and came very near making a prisoner of President Madison.

11. Early in September, Ross proceeded with the British fleet and army to capture Baltimore. He landed a few miles from the city, and, while marching to attack it, he was killed in a skirmish. Soon afterward a severe battle, known as that of North Point, occurred [Sept. 12], while the British ships, under Admiral Cochrane, were attacking Fort McHenry, in Baltimore harbor.

12. The Americans behaved with great valor, and so opposed the British, at every move, that they concluded it was useless to make further efforts to capture Baltimore. So they sailed away. This defense was considered a great victory, for it not only saved the city of Baltimore from capture, but that of other cities on the seaboard.

13. During the summer of 1814, British ships continually annoyed the people on the New England coast. Stonington was attacked in August, but the armed inhab-

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What occurred in Maryland? 10. What did the British do? 11. What occurred near Baltimore? 12. What can you tell of the defense of Baltimore? 13. What occurred on the New England coast?

itants, after opposing them for four days, finally compelled the British to leave on the 12th. After this, the war almost ceased at the North.

14. There was yet much trouble and danger in the South. The Indians were rather quiet, but the Spaniards, who owned Florida, favored the British. The Spanish governor allowed the fitting out of a British fleet at Pensacola, to attack the American fort at the entrance to Mobile Bay, and encouraged two hundred Creek warriors to go with them. The attack was made on the 11th of September, 1814. The British were driven off, with the loss of one of their vessels and many men.

15. General Jackson, who commanded at the South, told the Spanish governor that he would punish him for helping the enemies of the Americans, if he did not give a good excuse for his conduct. The governor paid no attention to what Jackson said. So the general, early in November, marched his army into Florida, drove the British in Pensacola to their shipping, and made the governor beg for mercy, and give up the fort, town, and every thing else.

16. And now the people of New Orleans were greatly alarmed by the news that a large number of British ships and soldiers were coming to attack the city. They sent in great haste to General Jackson, asking him to come and help them. He arrived there in December, and soon after that, General Pakenham, with twelve thousand of Wellington's soldiers, appeared below New Orleans.

17. Jackson was soon prepared for the invaders. First he had skirmishes with the advancing British. Finally, on the 8th of January, 1815, a very severe battle was fought four miles below the city, where Jackson had erected strong

---

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell of events in Florida? 15. What did General Jackson do? 16. What can you tell about New Orleans? 17. What preparations against the British were made?

works, armed with a few cannons. These works stretched across from the Mississippi river to a deep cypress swamp.

18. Jackson had about six thousand men behind his works, most of them armed with rifles. The British in full force marched up. When they were within rifle-shot, the Americans fairly rained a shower of bullets upon them. Pakenham was killed, and soon the whole British army fled, leaving seven hundred men dead, and more than a thousand wounded, on the field. The Americans lost only eight killed and thirteen wounded.

19. The battle at New Orleans was the last one, on land, of the SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE. The victory made the Americans rejoice greatly. The American and British governments, through their agents appointed for the purpose, had already made another agreement to become friends.

20. That Treaty of peace and friendship was completed at Ghent, in Belgium, on the day before Christmas, in 1814; and forty days after the battle at New Orleans, the President of the United States proclaimed PEACE. Then a day was appointed for the whole nation to join in thanksgiving and praise to Almighty God for that blessed event.

21. The contest with Great Britain had just ended, when the Americans were compelled to engage in a short

#### WAR WITH ALGIERS.

22. We have already noticed [page 183], the sea-robbers in the Mediterranean, and how the Bashaw of Tripoli was humbled [see page 187]. The Dey, or Governor of

---

QUESTIONS.—18. Describe the battle of New Orleans. 19. What can you say of the victory at New Orleans? What was done? 20. What can you tell about the treaty for peace? 21. What happened at that time? 22. What can you tell about the sea-robbers in the Mediterranean



Algiers, having been deceived by the story that the British had destroyed all of the American war-vessels, began to rob their merchant-ships, and was very impertinent to the American agent there.

23. President Madison determined to humble the Algerine, also ; so he sent the brave Decatur to the Mediterranean, with a naval force, in May, 1815. He fell in with the Algerine fleet, took two of the vessels and many prisoners, and then sailed to Algiers. The governor was astonished. Decatur told him he must let every American go, and pay for all the property his people had robbed the Americans of, or he would destroy his ships and his city. The frightened governor did so, and after that he let the Americans alone.

24. Decatur then made the Bashaws or Governors of Tunis and Tripoli do the same thing ; and from that time to this, we have had very little trouble with the Barbary Powers, as they were called. In a little while, Decatur did there what all the powers of Europe had not been able to do.

25. And now the stirring administration of Mr. Madison drew to a close. Little else of much importance occurred before its end, except the admission of Indiana into the Union, and giving a new charter to the United States Bank. In the autumn of 1816, James Monroe, of Virginia, was elected President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, Vice-President of the United States.

---

QUESTIONS.—23. What can you tell about an expedition against the Algerines ? 24. What else did Decatur do ? 25. What can you say about the closing of Madison's administration ?

## SECTION VII.

## MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION. [1817-1825.]



MONROE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. James Monroe, the fifth President of the United States, was a soldier in the Revolution, and belonged to the Republican party. He chose able men for his cabinet, as advisers, and they all went to work industriously to get government matters out of the confusion in which the war had left them.

2. During the war the Americans manufactured cloth and many other things, which before they bought in England and France. They spent a great deal of money for machinery to do it with. When the French and English goods came in abundance after the war, these manufacturers were much injured, and thousands of people had nothing to do.

3. Like many other things, this, that seemed an evil, was a good. Thousands who were compelled to be idle went beyond the mountains into the fertile West, cultivated the soil, and became healthier, happier, and wealthier than they could have been had they remained in the East, and there founded new States.

---

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Monroe and his cabinet?  
2. What can you tell about manufactures 3. What did many people do?

4. During Mr. Monroe's administration, the Territories of Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, and Missouri, were admitted into the Union as States. Settlements also increased very rapidly all over the West. General prosperity was everywhere visible, and every body hoped for long years of repose, when some difficulty appeared in the South.

5. There were mischievous British subjects in Florida, who were exciting the Indians to injure the Americans. Toward the close of 1817, a large number of Creek and Seminole Indians and runaway negroes, commenced plundering and murdering the settlers on the borders of Georgia and Alabama. Troops were sent to protect the people, but the Indians, becoming aroused, placed all of them in great danger.

6. General Jackson was sent with a thousand mounted Tennesseans to the aid of the troops. He caught and hung two white men who had excited the Indians to murder and plunder his countrymen. He then marched to Pensacola, captured the town and fort, and sent the Spanish governor, and others who had also incited the Indians against the Americans, to Cuba.

7. At first, Jackson was severely censured for these acts, but he was finally commended. Not long afterward, Florida came into the possession of the government of the United States, by a treaty with Spain, and Jackson was made the first governor of the new territory.

8. When the people of Missouri asked Congress to admit their Territory into the Union as a State, there arose a great deal of discussion in Congress and out of it, as to whether slaves should be allowed there. These disputes continued about two years, and at times they were very warm.

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you say about Monroe's administration? 5. What occurred in the South? 6. What did General Jackson do? 7. What did the people think? What was done? 8. What can you tell about Missouri?

9. It was finally agreed to allow negro-slaves in Missouri; but it was also agreed that a line should be drawn from the southern boundary of Missouri to the Pacific Ocean, and that north of that line there should never be any slaves, in any new State that might be formed there. This was called the *Missouri Compromise*.

10. While this question was disturbing the people, Mr. Monroe and Mr. Tompkins were again chosen President and Vice-President. There was very little opposition to them, for the old Federal party had almost ceased to exist.

11. In 1818, Congress made a law by which the soldiers of the Revolution, yet living, were to be paid a pension, or so much money every year. The same year an arrangement was made for the Americans to share with the British in the Newfoundland fisheries; the value of which, as we have noticed [verse 4, page 11], was first made known by Cabot.

12. The sea-robbers, or pirates, were not all in the Mediterranean. There were a great many of them among the West India Islands, and they annoyed our merchant-vessels. The President sent a naval force there under Commodore Porter, in 1822, which destroyed more than twenty of the pirate-vessels. Commodore Perry captured many more of them the next year, and dispersed the remainder.

13. And now a pleasant event occurred. La Fayette, who came from France [page 139], and helped the Americans so nobly in the old War for Independence, came to visit the people of the United States. He arrived in the summer of 1824, stayed until the next year, and travelled

---

QUESTIONS.—9. What was agreed to? 10. What can you tell about a new election? 11. What can you tell about the old soldiers and the fisheries? 12. What can you tell about West India pirates? 13. What can you tell about La Fayette?



more than five thousand miles among us. A national vessel, named *Brandywine* in his honor (because he fought in the battle of Brandywine), was then sent to convey him home.

14. In the autumn of 1824, the people of the United States chose a new Chief Magistrate. John Quincy Adams, son of the old President, John Adams [verse 1, page 184,] was elected to that high office, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was chosen Vice-President.

## SECTION VIII.

### ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION. [1825-1829.]

1. John Quincy Adams, the sixth President of the United States, was a youth during the Revolution; yet he saw and knew much of its scenes. He became President on the 4th of March, 1825. At that time our country was at peace with all the world, and every thing appeared very prosperous.

2 There was a little trouble in Georgia in connection with the removal of the Creek and Cherokee Indians from that State, at the commencement of Adams's administration. But this difficulty soon disappeared, and these Indians went beyond the Mississippi river.



J. Q. ADAMS, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—14. What about another election? 1. What can you tell about John Quincy Adams? What can you say about peace and prosperity? 2. What can you tell about the Creek Indians in Georgia?

3. The same year [1825], the great canal in the State of New York, which connects Lake Erie with the Hudson river, was completed. It was a most wonderful work, for it was really making a navigable river over three hundred and sixty miles in length. Dewitt Clinton, while governor of New York, did more than any other man toward the accomplishment of the work.



DEWITT CLINTON.

4. A remarkable occurrence took place in the summer of 1826. On the 4th of July, just fifty years after the Declaration of Independence was adopted, Thomas Jefferson and John Adams died. They were both on the Committee that drew up the Declaration, [verse 17, page 131], both had been foreign ministers, and each had been Vice-President, and then President of the United States. At the time of their death, Mr. Adams was almost ninety years old, and Mr. Jefferson almost eighty-three.

5. We have noticed that the Americans, who commenced manufacturing cloth and other things during the war, were injured afterward by such goods coming from England, and being sold cheaper than they could make them. In order to help the American manufacturers, Congress, in 1828, laid a high duty on certain manufactured articles brought from England and France, and used by the Americans. This was called a Protective Tariff.

6. This *duty*, or *tariff*, made such goods dearer, and then the Americans could make money by manufacturing them at the same price. This plan to protect our manufacturers, and get money for the government, was called

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about a great canal? 4. What remarkable occurrence took place? 5. What more can you tell about American manufacturers? 6. What can you tell about a tariff?

*The American System.* It was afterward a cause of trouble, as we shall notice presently.

7. President Adams's term now drew to a close. The nation was very prosperous. The government was very little in debt, and was at peace with all the world. In the autumn of 1828, the people chose the soldier, Andrew Jackson [verse 24, page 201], to be their Chief Magistrate, and John C. Calhoun was again elected Vice-President.

---

## SECTION IX.

### JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION. [1829-1837.]

1. Andrew Jackson, the seventh President of the United States, was the last of the Chief Magistrates, excepting Harrison, who lived during the Revolution. Jackson, though quite a lad, was in the Patriot army in South Carolina, toward the close of the old War for Independence.

2. Jackson became President on the 4th of March, 1829. He was an honest man, with a strong will ; and he was always disposed to do what he thought was right, without regard to the opinions of others.

3. Jackson's administration



JACKSON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

---

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you say about our country and a new election ? 1. 2. What can you say about General Jackson ? 3. What occurred during the first two or three years of his administration ?

was a quiet one for two or three years. There was a little trouble about the Cherokee Indians, in Georgia, for a while, but nothing caused much uneasiness until the summer of 1832, when matters concerning the United States Bank, the Western Indians, and the Tariff, made a great stir.

4. The Bank could not exist after 1836, unless Congress should decree otherwise. At the beginning, Jackson believed that it ought not to exist, and promptly said so. In the winter of 1832, the officers of the Bank asked Congress to recharter it, that is, decree that it should go on and do business after 1836. Congress did so, but it was of no use.

5. We have observed, in verse 4, on page 179, how decrees of Congress become laws. When the Act of Congress for rechartering the United States Bank was handed to the President for him to sign, he refused, and returned it to Congress with a statement of his objections. This refusal is called a *Veto*. In this case it caused great dissatisfaction, for it was thought that business could not be done well without the Bank.



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

6. At this time there was more trouble with the Indians. In the summer of 1832, Black Hawk, a bold chief, led some of the warriors of the Western tribes against the white people near the Mississippi. But the war did not last long. United States troops soon beat the Indians, and Black Hawk was made a prisoner. He was taken to New York and other

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about the United States Bank? 5. What more can you tell about the Bank, and Congress, and a veto? 6. What can you tell about Black Hawk?



great cities, and was so astonished at the number and power of the white people, that he resolved never to go to war with them again.

7. The most serious trouble was about the Tariff, already mentioned. The people in the cotton-growing States did not like it; and political leaders of South Carolina declared that the duty should not be paid on goods brought into Charleston. They were upheld in this by John C. Calhoun, their leading statesman.

8. This defiance of law was a violation of the National Constitution, and President Jackson plainly told the people of South Carolina that they must pay the duty, or he would send United States troops there to compel them to, as Washington did [page 182], among the whisky-makers of Pennsylvania.

9. Matters appeared darker and darker every day, and Civil War seemed to be nigh. But early in 1833, Henry Clay, of Kentucky, proposed a plan, called the Compromise Measure, which satisfied all parties very well. It was adopted, and so the trouble ceased.

10. Again, in April, 1833, Jackson made war upon the United States Bank. Almost ten million dollars belonging to the National Government were in that bank, and the use of this money was profitable to it. Jackson declared that the money was not safe there, and he ordered it all to be taken from the bank, and put into various State banks. This injured the old bank very much, and as it could not get a new charter, it stopped



HENRY CLAY.

---

QUESTIONS.—7. What trouble now occurred? 8. What did the President do? 9. How was the trouble ended? 10. What can you tell about the United States Bank and the public money?

business forever, in 1836. This removal of the government money from the bank caused great confusion in business, for a while.

11. Jackson was again chosen President of the Republic in the autumn of 1832, and he conducted public affairs with vigor. Among other things, he attempted the removal of all the Indians in the United States to a fine country west of the Mississippi, where they would not be disturbed by the white people.



OSCEOLA.

12. The Seminoles in Florida refused to go. Led by Osceola, a brave and cunning chief, they made war upon the white people, which continued for several years. Many United States soldiers were sent there, from time to time, but the Indians, in their dark swamps, defied them.

13. Finally, in 1836, the Creeks joined the Seminoles, and mail-coaches, steamboats, and villages in Georgia and Alabama, were attacked by them. General Winfield Scott went there with troops and beat the Creeks; and during the summer of that year, several thousands of them went to their new homes beyond the Mississippi.

14. President Jackson's second term now drew to a close. The government of the United States had never before stood so high in the opinion of the world. France and other governments of Europe were compelled to be honest in paying what had long been owing to the people of this

---

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell of a new election? What did Jackson try to do? 12. What can you tell about Indians? 13. What can you tell of an Indian War? 14. What can you say about Jackson's administration?

country, for injuries done to their ships before the war of 1812. Jackson always acted upon the principle—*ask nothing but what is right, and submit to nothing that is wrong.*

15. Two more new States had now been added to the Union, by the admission of Arkansas and Michigan. In the autumn of 1836, Martin Van Buren, of New York, who had been Vice-President for four years, was chosen President of the United States; and in the following winter the Senate chose Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, to be Vice-President.

## SECTION X.

### VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION. [1837-1841.]

1. Martin Van Buren became the eighth President of the United States on the 4th of March, 1837, when he was about fifty-five years of age. He had been in public life many years, and was well acquainted with public affairs.

2. At the time of his inauguration, the business of the country was in great confusion. The State Banks had lent the public money freely, to the people. Speculation and extravagance followed; and all over the land people seemed to be almost crazy to build villages, fine houses, and live as



VAN BUREN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—15. What can you tell about new States? What about another election? 1. What can you tell about Martin Van Buren? 2. What can you say about business and the actions of the people?

if there would be no end to the money. Finally, when there was no more to lend, and many could not pay back, disaster and trouble followed.

3. The troubles in business became so great, that Van Buren called Congress together in September, 1837, to talk the matter over. But they did very little to help the people out of their troubles. Finally it was concluded not to let the banks have any more of the public money. So men called Sub-Treasurers were appointed to receive it at different sea-ports, and keep it until called for. This plan, which was in use until the late civil war, was called *The Independent Treasury System*.

4. The Seminole war was continued. Finally Osceola was invited to the camp of General Jesup, who commanded the United States troops in Florida, to have a talk about peace. There Osceola was made a prisoner, and taken to Charleston, where he died not long afterward. This was unfair; and yet it seemed the only way to stop the war.

5. Colonel Taylor, who afterward became President of the United States, was in Florida a long time with troops, and had several battles with the Indians; but they were not finally subdued until 1842, when the war ended. It had continued seven years.

6. In 1837, some of the people of Canada resolved to become independent of Great Britain, and commenced a revolution. Many Americans went there to help them, and this caused very unpleasant feelings between the governments of the United States and Great Britain.

7. President Van Buren did all he could to keep the Americans from going to Canada, but it was not until 1841, when John Tyler was President, that a stop was put to it.

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about Congress? 4, 5. What more can you tell about the Seminole war? 6. What can you tell of troubles in Canada? 7. What did the Presidents do?



Then the revolution had been put down ; and, since then, all has been quiet in Canada.

8. At this time the Americans had a serious dispute with the British, about the boundary line between the State of Maine and the province of New Brunswick. This, too, made a great deal of unpleasant feeling, and at one time the people in that region armed themselves for war. General Scott went there and made peace ; and in 1842 the whole matter was settled.

9. In the autumn of 1841, General Harrison, of Ohio [verse 1, page 195], was chosen President of the United States, with John Tyler, of Virginia, as Vice-President. Now the two political parties were called respectively, Whigs and Democrats. Those who were the friends of Jackson and Van Buren, were the Democrats, and those who elected Harrison were Whigs.

## SECTION XI.

HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION.  
[1841-1845]

1. William Henry Harrison, the ninth President of the United States, took his seat, as such, on the 4th of March, 1841, when he was almost



HARRISON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell about a boundary line? 9. What can you say about a new election? 1. What can you tell about General Harrison and a new President?



TYLER, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

seventy years of age. Precisely one month afterward, he died. Then, according to the decree of the National Constitution, the Vice-President became the acting chief magistrate of the Republic. On the 6th of April, 1841, the

#### ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN TYLER

began. Tyler was a much younger man than Harrison, and was the tenth President of the United States.

2. President Harrison had appointed the last day of May for Congress to meet and consider the affairs of the country. They did so, and remained together until the middle of September. Their chief business was to make a law for

chartering a United States Bank.

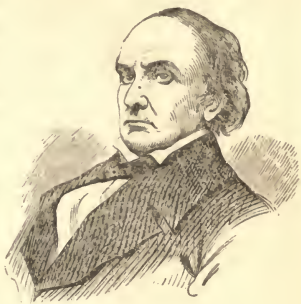
3. President Tyler, like Jackson, refused to sign the law. His political friends were very much offended, and all of his Cabinet advisers left him, and would have nothing more to do with him, excepting Daniel Webster, who was the Secretary of State. Mr. Webster knew that it was best for his country to remain, on account of an unfinished treaty with Great Britain, and he did so.

4. During Mr. Tyler's administration, changes were made in the tariff laws; the State of Rhode Island was fa-

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about Congress? 3. What can you tell about Tyler's troubles? What did Webster do? 4. What occurred during Tyler's administration?

vored with a new constitution, and measures were taken for the admission of Texas into the Union. There was much trouble in Rhode Island about the constitution. Some liked the old charter given them by King Charles the Second [verse 3, page 77], well enough, and others wished a new one. The two parties came very near having a war about it.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

5. The admission of Texas was an important matter. That State was once a part of Mexico. A great many Americans had settled there, and they finally concluded to have a government of their own. They had to fight for it. After a sharp struggle the people of Texas became independent of Mexico in the year 1836.

6. After a while the Texas people wished their State to become one of the United States, and arrangements were made for that purpose in 1844. Just at the close of Mr. Tyler's administration in 1845, Congress agreed to it, and Texas became one of the States of our Union, on the 4th of July following.

7. The annexation of Texas had much effect on the election of President in the autumn of 1844. A majority of the people were in favor of that annexation, and James K. Polk, of Tennessee, who was also in favor of it, was chosen Chief Magistrate, with George M. Dallas of Pennsylvania, as Vice-President.

8. One of the most wonderful things ever before known,

---

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you say about Texas? 6. What did Texas and the United States do? 7. What happened in 1844? 8. What can you tell about a wonderful invention?

occurred in 1844 in connection with Mr. Polk. A meeting of Democrats, at Baltimore, having selected Mr. Polk as the best man for President, the news of this choice was sent from there to Washington City, forty miles, by the Magnetic Telegraph. This wonderful invention by Professor Samuel F. B. Morse, an American, by which one man's thoughts may be conveyed to another man, a thousand miles in a second, was then just completed, and that was the first public use ever made of it.



POLK, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

## SECTION XII.

### POLK'S ADMINISTRATION. [1845-1849.]

1. James Knox Polk was fifty years old when he became the eleventh President of the United States, on the 4th of March, 1845. He was a Democrat in politics, and his party was strong throughout the country.

2. The coming in of Texas was the most important event at the beginning of Mr. Polk's administration. The government of Mexico had never acknowledged the independence of that State, but continued to claim it as a part of that republic. Of course the act of Congress in admitting it was very offensive.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you say about James K. Polk? 2. What can you say about the admission of Texas?

3. This offense and an old quarrel about debts due from Mexico to people of the United States, were the pretexts for a war. Intending war, the President ordered General Taylor and fifteen hundred soldiers to go to Texas in July. They encamped at Corpus Christi, not far from the Rio Grande, or Grand River. At the same time some American war-vessels went into the Gulf of Mexico.

4. A large number of Mexican troops collected at Matamoras, near the mouth of the Rio Grande, at the close of 1845. Early in January following, General Taylor, with most of his troops, formed a camp and commenced building a fort on the opposite side of the river. General Ampudia (Am-poo-dhee-ah), who commanded the Mexicans, ordered him to leave in twenty-four hours, but he refused to do so.

5. General Arista (Ah-rees-tah) now became the Mexican commander. He was a better soldier than Ampudia, and Taylor's situation became a dangerous one. Soon, armed Mexicans crossed the river, and late in April some Americans were killed by them. This was the first blood shed in

#### THE WAR WITH MEXICO.

6. Taylor had left some soldiers, with provisions and other things, at Point Isabel. He heard that a large number of Mexicans were marching in that direction, so he hastened thither with a greater part of his army. When he had gone, the Mexicans attacked his fort, opposite Matamoras, which compelled him to march back to defend that.

7. On his way back, General Taylor fell in with six

---

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about preparations for war. 4. What occurred on the Rio Grande? 5. What can you tell about the two armies? 6. What can you tell about the commencement of the war?



thousand Mexicans, under Arista. It was on the 8th of May, 1846. The place where they met was called *Palo Alto*, and there they had a very hard fight for five hours. The Mexicans were badly beaten, and lost six hundred men.

8. Just at evening the next day, the Americans again fell in with the Mexicans at a place called *Resaca de la Palma*, three miles from Matamoras. There they had another severe battle, and the Mexicans were beaten, with a loss of more than a thousand men. These misfortunes greatly alarmed them.

9. Before these two battles were heard of in the United States, Congress had declared war against Mexico, and the Secretary of War, with the help of General Scott, had planned an extensive campaign. Mexico extends across from the Gulf of Mexico to the Pacific Ocean, so it was planned to send war-ships around to attack the enemy on the coast of the latter. The President was allowed to raise an army of fifty thousand men, and it was determined to take possession of Mexico.

10. After his successful battles, Taylor drove the Mexicans from Matamoras, and marched toward Monterey, a strong city in Mexico. He took that city on the 24th of September, and then encamped near it, where he waited for further orders what to do, from the President of the United States.

11. While Taylor was waiting, other officers were busy elsewhere. General Wool was preparing the recruits, or the new men who joined the army, for military service ; and in October he marched into Mexico, and took possession of some of the country. In November General Worth took one or two places away from the Mexicans. At that time

---

QUESTIONS.—7, 8. What can you tell about two battles with the Mexicans? 9. What did Congress do? What plans were arranged? 10. What can you tell about General Taylor in Mexico? 11. What can you tell about other movements in Mexico?

General Taylor was in motion, with his main army. After taking possession of a large tract of country, Taylor encamped at Victoria.

12. General Scott, as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States, went to Mexico early in 1847, and prepared to attack the strong town of Vera Cruz, and the fort there. For that purpose, he strengthened his own army, by taking many troops from General Taylor. Yet that brave soldier, with only about five thousand men, marched boldly against the Mexican general, Santa Anna, who had twenty thousand.



GENERAL SCOTT.

13. At Buena Vista (Bwe-nah Ves-tah), which means "pleasant view," the two armies had a terrible battle on the 23d of February, 1847. It lasted all day. The Mexicans were dreadfully beaten, and left full two thousand men on the field, killed and wounded. The Americans lost about seven hundred.

14. All northern Mexico was now in possession of the Americans ; and in the course of a few months, the conquering Taylor returned to the United States, and was everywhere received with the greatest honors. Then the people first began to talk about making him President of our Republic.

15. While these things were occurring, the Americans, under different leaders, were taking possession of other parts of northern Mexico. General Kearney was in chief command of what was called the Army of the West ; and

---

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell about Generals Scott and Taylor? 13. What can you tell about a battle? 15. What else did the Americans do?

in August, 1846, he drove the Mexicans from Santa Fé, the chief city of New Mexico, and took possession of that broad territory.



COLONEL FREMONT.

16. During the same summer, Colonel Fremont (the brave explorer of the Rocky Mountains) and others, took possession of California. After some more battling until early in January, 1847, all became quiet. Then a vast territory, stretching along the Pacific Ocean, and several hundred miles into the country, came into possession

of the Americans.

17. In the mean while, Colonel Doniphan, with a thousand brave Missourians, made a triumphant march into northern Mexico. After capturing Chihuahua (Chee-wah-wah), one of the finest provinces of that country, he returned to New Orleans, having marched over five thousand miles. General Scott was now on his victorious way toward the great city of Mexico.

#### SCOTT'S INVASION OF MEXICO.

18. Scott landed near Vera Cruz with about thirteen thousand men, early in March, 1847. His troops were borne there by a fleet commanded by Commodore Conner, which remained to assist in the attack on Vera Cruz. That attack occurred on the 18th of March, and continued nine days. Then the city, the strong castle of San Juan de Ulloa (San Whan dah Oo-lo-ah), and five thousand pris-

---

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell about Fremont and others? 17. What can you tell about Colonel Doniphan? 18. What can you tell about the Americans at Vera Cruz?

oners, with five hundred cannons, were given up to the Americans.

19. On the 8th of April, Scott's army commenced their march toward the city of Mexico. At Cerro Gordo, a difficult place in the mountains, they were met by Santa Anna and a large army. There they had a severe battle, when the Mexicans lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, over four thousand men. Santa Anna escaped on the back of a mule.

20. Week after week, Scott's army continued to move on through that interesting country, taking possession of place after place, and everywhere driving the Mexicans before them. Within two months, that army of not more than ten thousand men, took some of the strongest places in Mexico, made ten thousand prisoners, and captured seven hundred cannons, ten thousand muskets, and thirty thousand bombshells and cannon-balls.

21. Scott rested awhile at Puebla (Pweb-lah), and in August moved on over the lofty Cordilleras, a chain of high mountains in Mexico. From the summits of these hills, the Americans looked down into distant valleys, and saw the city of Mexico, the object of their long and perilous march.

22. Onward the conquering army marched, and after fighting several hard battles, and always beating the Mexicans, they appeared before the ancient city, where Cortez, a great Spanish soldier [verse 13, page 10], appeared almost three hundred years before. Santa Anna and his army, with the government officers, fled from the doomed capital at night ; and on the next morning, the 14th of September, 1847, General Scott and his army entered the city as victors, and took possession of the Mexican empire.

---

QUESTIONS.—19. What can you tell of the battle at Cerro Gordo? 20. What did Scott's army accomplish? 21. What can you tell of the approach to the city of Mexico 22. What can you tell about the conquest of Mexico?

23. The war soon ceased. On the 2d of February, 1848, the Mexican Congress and American Commissioners made a bargain or treaty for peace. It was agreed to by the United States Government, and then all but New Mexico and California, which had been taken from the Mexicans by the Americans, was given up. These provinces became a part of the United States, and California was afterward admitted into the Union.

24. In the same month when this treaty was made, gold was first found in a mill-stream on the American fork of the Sacramento river, in California. Soon it was found elsewhere ; and when it was known that gold was plentiful there, thousands of people went from the United States and elsewhere, to dig it. Gold, worth millions and millions of dollars, has been found in California since then, and a fine State of the Union has grown up on that coast of the Pacific Ocean.

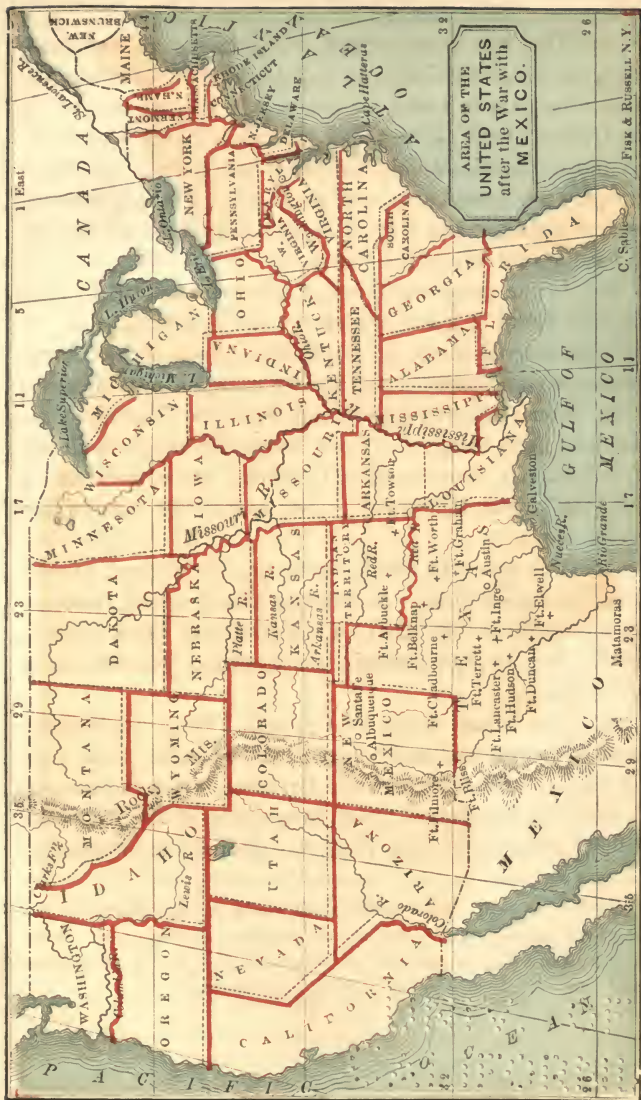
25. The war with Mexico was the chief event of Mr. Polk's administration. A difficulty with England, concerning the northern boundary of Oregon, had been settled ; and in May, 1848, Wisconsin was admitted into the Union as a State.

26. The brave deeds of General Taylor, in Mexico, made him respected and beloved by the people of the United States ; and at the election for President, in the autumn of 1848, he was chosen Chief Magistrate of the Republic. Millard Fillmore, of New York, was elected Vice-President.

---

QUESTIONS.—23. What can you tell about the agreements of the two governments ? 24. What can you tell about finding gold ? What did it lead to ? 25. What were the chief events of Polk's administration ? 26. What can you say about a new election ?







## SECTION XIII.

## TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION.

[1849-1850.]

1. Zachary Taylor was sixty-five years of age when, on the 5th of March, 1849, he became the twelfth President of the United States. The 4th of March came on Sunday that year, and he was not inaugurated until the next day.

2. We have noticed that thousands went to California to dig gold. Very soon there were people enough there to form a State, and in September, 1849, twenty months after the first gold was found there, they met and formed a constitution, or solemn covenant, by which they agreed to be governed.

3. In February, 1850, the people of California asked Congress to admit their country into the Union as a State.

That request made a great stir, for they had declared in their Constitution that there should be no negro-slaves in California. The people of the northern and western States liked that declaration, but those of the southern States did



TAYLOR, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about President Taylor and his inauguration? 2. What more can you say about California? 3. What can you tell about California coming into the Union?

not like it, and at one time some of the politicians in that section threatened to break up the Union, if California should be admitted as a free-labor State.

4. This matter was disputed about in Congress for many months. Finally, Henry Clay [page 217], proposed a plan that suited all parties very well. It was agreed in that plan, that California might come in without slaves, and that if any slaves ran away from the South into the free-labor States, they should be given up to their owners. The latter measure was known as the Fugitive Slave Law. All this was agreed to in Congress, but many people, particularly at the North, were not pleased with what was called the *Compromise Measure*.

5. While this matter was before Congress, President Taylor sickened and died. That event occurred in July, 1850. He was the second President who had died while in office. The Vice-President, as before [page 222], then became President, and on the 10th of July, 1850,

#### FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION

began.

6. During President Taylor's brief administration of sixteen months, one State and three Territories were added to the members of the Republic. One of the Territories was named Utah, but was called by the people who settled there, Deseret, or the Land of the Honeybee. It is near the middle of our continent.

7. Utah was settled by a people called *Mormons*, who have a peculiar religious belief. Their chief man is called *Prophet*, and the people are obliged to do as he says. There are now many thousands of Mormons in Utah, but because

---

QUESTIONS.—4. What was finally done? 5. What sad event happened? 6. What occurred during Taylor's administration? 7. What can you tell about the Mormons?

they will not do as the rest of the people of the United States want them to, their Territory has never been admitted into the Union as a State.

8. Some trouble with Cuba, one of the West India islands belonging to Spain, commenced in the spring of 1850, and at one time it threatened to make war between the United States and Spain. But the dispute was fairly settled, and the trouble disappeared.

9. An important expedition left New York in May, 1850, under the command of Lieutenant De Haven. It went to the Frozen Ocean, at the North, in search of Sir John Franklin, a great English explorer, who went there five years before, and never returned. Another similar expedition sailed from New York in 1853, under Dr. Kane, and was gone until the autumn of 1855. The commander and his men suffered terribly among the ice and snows, during the long, dark polar winters.

10. In 1852, the United States and Great Britain had a dispute about catching fishes in the neighborhood of Newfoundland [see verse, 4, page 11]. They both sent armed ships there, but the difficulty was finally settled by the better way of *talking*, rather than by *fighting*.



FILLMORE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell about Cuba? 9. What can you tell of wonderful expeditions to the North? 10. What can you tell about a fishery dispute?



11. In the same year American war-ships went to Japan, off the eastern coast of China, and the commander carried a letter to the Emperor, from our President, asking him to allow Americans, as well as the Dutch, to trade there. The Emperor agreed to it, and the Americans and Japanese have been good friends ever since.

12. In the autumn of 1852, the people of the United States chose Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, to be their next President, and William R. King, of Alabama, for Vice-President. Not long afterward a new Territory, called Washington, was made out of Oregon. So the States of our Republic continually grow. First Territories, then States.



PIERCE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

## SECTION XIV.

### PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION. [1853-1857.]

1. Franklin Pierce was forty-nine years of age when he became the fourteenth President of the United States, on the 4th of March, 1853. The country was prosperous and peaceful, and nothing disturbed the general harmony, excepting a little dispute with Mexico about boundaries, which was soon settled.

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell about an expedition to Japan?  
12. What can you tell about a new election? 1. What can you tell about President Pierce and the country?

2. In May of that year, ships were sent to explore the eastern coast of Asia ; and at the same time there were land expeditions in progress, searching for a good route for a railway to the Pacific Ocean. Since then, ocean steamships have been going regularly across the Pacific from America to Asia ; and a railway, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean, has been made, so that now we may go from New York to Japan and China, in a very short space of time.



AN OCEAN STEAMSHIP.

3. In the year 1855, the Americans became much excited about negro slavery in a Territory west of the Mississippi, called Kansas. People from all parts of the Union went there to settle, and they quarreled, and sometimes fought, because a part of them were in favor of having slaves there, and a part of them were opposed to it. There was real war there, in 1856, but it was soon stopped. Those who opposed slavery were the more numerous ; and in January, 1861, Kansas became a free State of the Republic.

4. Some trouble was expected with foreign nations in 1855. Spain was offended because our government seemed determined to possess her island of Cuba. Great Britain was offended because we sent her minister home for violating our laws, by enlisting men for the British army ; and the Central American States were offended, because lawless men went there from our borders, to seize their country.

5. These things were settled in a friendly manner, and

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about exploring expeditions ?  
3. What can you say about Kansas ? 4. Tell about threatened trouble with foreign nations. 5. Tell about the ocean telegraph wires.

nothing of much importance occurred for some time, excepting attempts to connect America and Europe by telegraphic wires more than sixteen hundred miles long. [See verse 3, page 223]. It was accomplished at the close of the summer of 1858, when the Queen of England spoke by telegraph to the President of the United States, and he answered on the same day. The wires immediately broke, and it was a long time before another and durable cable, as the rope of wires was called, was made.



BUCHANAN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

6. In the autumn of 1856, James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, was elected President of the United States, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, Vice-President.

## SECTION XV.

### BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION. [1857-1861.]

1. James Buchanan was inaugurated the fifteenth President of the United States on the 4th of March, 1857. From the beginning to the end of his administration, the subject of slavery kept the people of the country in continual disputes, and created much bad feeling.

2. The Mormons [verse 7, page 232], made some trou-

QUESTIONS.—6. Who were elected President and Vice-President?

1. What was the principal feature of this administration? 2. What further can you tell of the Mormons?

ble. Because Congress would not make their Territory a State, they threatened to rebel. Troops were sent to compel their obedience ; but before these arrived, the Mormons concluded to obey the laws and make no more trouble.

3. Slight difficulties with foreign nations occurred in 1857 and 1858, but they were small in comparison with troubles at home on account of slavery. Men in the slave-labor States determined to bring negroes from Africa again, and to fill some of the new Territories with them. The people of the free-labor States declared that they should do no such thing.

4. Bitter quarrels were kept up. These were stopped for a little while, and the attention of the people was taken up with some distinguished men from Japan, and a lad (the Prince of Wales), who was heir to the throne of Great Britain, who came here in 1860, to visit our President. But the old quarrel about slavery was soon resumed.

5. Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, who was opposed to slavery, was elected President of the United States



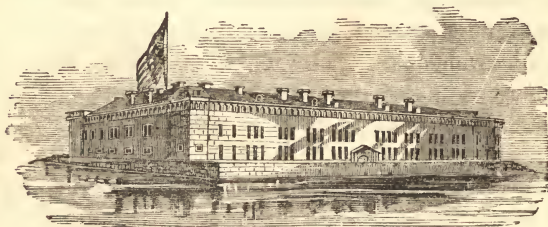
LINCOLN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

QUESTIONS.—3. What great dispute created trouble in 1857 and 1858? 4. Tell what important events took place in 1860. 5. Who was elected President of the United States in 1860? What did politicians do?



in 1860. Politicians in the slave-labor States made this a pretext for insurrection against the National Government. Claiming the right to do so, they declared several States to be separated from the rest ; and they formed a confederacy of them, and made Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, their chief ruler.

6. These Confederates commenced war against their Government, in the spring of 1861, by attacking Fort Sum-



FORT SUMTER.

ter, in Charleston Harbor. President Lincoln called for a large army to check them. The people in the slave-labor States took up arms to defend their section of the country against troops sent by the Government to put down the insurrection. Then began the most dreadful civil war ever known.

#### THE GREAT CIVIL WAR [1861].

7. Before the Civil War broke out, unfaithful men in the higher offices of the government favored the insurgents. The greater part of the little Army had been sent to the western frontiers. Southern forts and arsenals were filled with arms and ammunition. The Navy had been reduced. The Treasury was empty, and public credit was low ; and the

---

QUESTIONS.—6. How was a civil war begun ? What did President Lincoln and the people do ? 7. What did unfaithful men who managed the Government do ? How did the people act ?



President found the Government weak in resources of every kind. But the people all over the free-labor States hurried to help him when he called, and soon formed a large army.

8. The Confederates tried hard to get Washington City, the seat of Government, intending to drive Mr. Lincoln away and make Jefferson Davis President. They raised an army, and went as far as Manassas, in Virginia, thirty miles from Washington, where they stayed a long time. Late in May, National troops, as those were called that defended the Government, went across the Potomac River, from Washington into Virginia, and took possession of Alexandria and Arlington Heights.

9. Early in June, a battle was fought at Big Bethel, a few miles from Fortress Monroe, in Virginia, when the Nationals were beaten. On the very next day [June 11, 1861], there was a little battle at Romney, in Western Virginia, when the Confederates were beaten. At the same time, National troops were marching across Western Virginia, under General McClellan, to assist in defending Washington City. At this time, loyal citizens of Western Virginia formed a new State, called WEST VIRGINIA, which was recognized by the Government.

10. Jefferson Davis and his associates went to Richmond in July, and called that the capital



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

---

QUESTIONS.—8. What did the Confederates try hard to do? What can you tell about their army? What did the National troops do? 9. What can you tell about a battle, in June, near Fortress Monroe? What about another battle the next day? What were the National troops doing? What can you tell about a new State? 10. What can you tell about the Confederates at Richmond? Give an account of the battle of Bull's Run?

of the Confederacy. National troops soon started from Washington to drive them away and stop the insurrection. They met the Confederates near a place known as Manassas Junction, and on a stream of water called Bull's Run, the two armies had a hard fight [July 21], and several hundred were killed and wounded on each side. The National troops were made to fly back toward Washington in great confusion.

11. General McClellan now took command of the troops. They were called the Army of the Potomac, and for many months he was preparing them to march to Richmond. In the mean time there was war in Missouri; and in a battle at Wilson's Creek, on the 9th of August, the brave General Lyon was killed.

12. The war was all the time spreading wider and wider, and more and more people were engaged in it. At the close of August, General Butler and Commodore Stringham, with many troops, went to Hatteras Inlet, on the coast of North Carolina, and took away from the Confederates some forts they had built there. Very soon afterward, General Rosecrans had some fighting with Confederates in Western Virginia.

13. At a place called Ball's Bluff, not far up the Potomac from Washington City, there was a battle at the close of October, when the Nationals were badly beaten. A week later, troops under General Grant were beaten by the Confederates in a fight at Belmont [November 7], on the Missouri side of the Mississippi River. On the same day the National navy, under Admiral Dupont, captured forts near Port Royal, on the coast of South Carolina; and from

---

QUESTIONS.—11. What did General McClellan now do? What was his army called? What have you to say about the war elsewhere? 12. What have you to say about the war? What was done on the coast of North Carolina and in Western Virginia? 13. What can you tell about the battles of Ball's Bluff, Belmont, and on the coast of South Carolina?

that time the Government troops held all the fine islands in that neighborhood.

14. At the close of 1861, the war appeared at places several hundred miles apart, and was becoming more and more terrible. At the same time, those who ruled England, France, and some other countries, helped the confederates against the Government all they could, safely, and made the war longer and sharper.

#### THE GREAT CIVIL WAR [1862].

15. Early in January, General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough, with many troops and several war-vessels, captured Roanoke Island, on the coast of North Carolina. This was a great loss to the Confederates. It gave the Nationals control over a large region of country, and threatened Norfolk. A few days afterward [January 19, 1862], General Thomas, with Western troops, won a victory over the Confederates in Eastern Kentucky, near a place called Mill Spring.

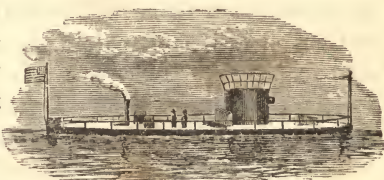
16. Toward the middle of February, General Grant (who afterward became very famous), with Western troops, went to the Cumberland River, not far from Nashville, in Tennessee, and took from the Confederates Fort Donelson [Feb. 16], and over thirteen thousand men. This was more men than General Scott went into Mexico with [page 228], and conquered it. Commodore Foote gave General Grant much assistance.

17. Toward the western part of Arkansas, among the Ozark Mountains, is a place called Pea Ridge. There Na-

---

QUESTIONS.—14. What have you to say about the war at the close of 1861? What about foreigners? 15. Tell what happened at Roanoke Island, and what were the effects? What did General Thomas do? 16. Give an account of the capture of Fort Donelson. 17. Give an account of the battle of Pea Ridge; and the doings of the *Merri-mac* and *Monitor*.

tional troops, under Generals Curtis and Sigel, fought and conquered Confederates under General Van Dorn, on the 8th of March. On the same day, many hundred miles eastward of this battle-field, on the coast of the Atlantic, a ship of war covered with iron, called *the Merrimac*, attacked and destroyed some National war-vessels, made of wood, near Fortress Monroe. That night a strange vessel, made of iron, with a sort of tower that could be turned round, in which were cannons, suddenly appeared, and drove the *Merrimac* back to Norfolk. The vessel was called *The Monitor*, and was commanded by Lieutenant Worden.



THE MONITOR.

18. The President of the United States is the Commander-in-Chief, or head-general, of all the warriors of the nation, on land and sea, and has supreme authority over them. Now, knowing that the Confederates were in arms in many places, and growing more numerous every day, he ordered all of his armies to move against them on the 22d of February, the birthday of Washington. The Confederates at Manassas fled toward Richmond, expecting General McClellan would follow. Grant had gone over to the Tennessee River, and early in April, near Pittsburg Landing, he and his troops fought the Confederates under General Beauregard for two days [April 6, 7], beating them, and driving them into the State of Mississippi. This is called the battle of Shiloh.

19. At the same time, a fleet of gunboats, under Com-

---

QUESTIONS.—18. What is the power of the President? What did the President order concerning the armies? What did the Confederates do? What can you tell about Gen. Grant? 19. What did Commodore Foote do? What fort was surrendered to Gillmore, and what town was taken by Mitchel? What did General Augur do?

modore Foote, and some troops, captured Island No. 10, an important place in the Mississippi River. Four days afterwards, the Confederates gave up Fort Pulaski, at the mouth of the Savannah River, to General Gillmore. On the same day (April 11), General Mitchel took possession of Huntsville, in Northern Alabama. On the 18th, General Augur drove the Confederates out of Fredericksburg, in Virginia.



COMMODORE FOOTE.

20. The National troops gained a great deal in the month of April, 1862. Besides what has just been mentioned, they captured two heavy forts below New Orleans, and on the 24th of the month, took that city. The forts were taken by war-vessels, under Commodores Farragut and Porter. The Confederates, twenty thousand in number, under General Lovell, fled from New Orleans when the Nationals approached, and General Butler took possession of the city. This was a terrible loss to the Confederates.



GENERAL M'CLELLAN.

21. Early in April, General McClellan, with the Army of the Potomac, which had gone down to the neighborhood of Fortress Monroe, began a march up the Peninsula toward Richmond. He moved slowly. Between the first of May and the last of June, several very severe battles were fought within a short

---

QUESTIONS.—20. What did the National troops do in April, 1862? What can you tell about New Orleans? 21. What did General McClellan do? What happened?



distance of Richmond. This was called the Peninsula Campaign.

22. McClellan thought he could not get to Richmond with his army, and so he stopped fighting. The Confederates then rushed toward Washington. General John Pope was between them and Washington, with an army; and McClellan was ordered to hurry on with his own army in that direction, to help Pope. He did not get there in time to do much good, and the Nationals were driven to the forts around Washington.

23. General Robert E. Lee, then chief commander of the Confederates in Virginia, led them into Maryland. Not far from Harper's Ferry, severe battles were fought; the hardest being called the battle of Antietam, because it was on Antietam Creek. It was at the middle of September. Lee was beaten [Sept. 17], and compelled to fly across the Potomac into Virginia, pursued by General A. E. Burnside, who, soon afterward, took command of the whole army, in place of McClellan.

24. Burnside followed Lee to the Rappahannock River; and at Fredericksburg, on the 13th of December, the two armies fought a great battle. The Nationals had crossed the river, and were driven back with great loss, and there they remained until late in the next spring.

25. All this time there were important doings in the West, or beyond the Alleghany Mountains. All summer long the Confederates tried to get back what they had lost in Kentucky and Tennessee. They marched a large army, under Bragg, toward the Ohio River; and at one time it seemed as if they might really seize Cincinnati and Louis-

---

QUESTIONS.—22 What else did General McClellan do? What can you tell about the army under Pope? 23. What did General Lee do? What can you tell about a battle in Maryland? 24. What did Burnside do? What was done at Fredericksburg? 25. What did the Confederates try to do in the West? What was done?

ville. But they were kept back by Generals Buell, Wallace, and Rousseau; and Bragg was finally driven toward Alabama.

26. During the summer, Memphis, Natchez, and other places on the Mississippi were captured by the Nationals, and much was done toward opening the river to the safe passage of steamboats. At the same time the chief army in the West, lying in Northern Mississippi, was assisting in the matter. On the 19th of September, General Rosecrans fought and conquered General Price, at Iuka, Mississippi. A little later there were severe battles near Corinth. Before the close of the year, the Confederates were nearly all driven out of Kentucky and Western Tennessee.

27. At the close of December, General Rosecrans fought the Confederates several days at Murfreesboro', below Nashville. He was victorious, but lost twelve thousand men. He drove the Confederates toward Georgia.

28. In July [1862], Congress gave President Lincoln power to declare the slaves in certain States free for ever. In September, he told the opposing people in those States, that if they did not cease making war on the Government, within the next hundred days, he should set their slaves free. They scorned and disregarded this proclamation. So, on the first of January, 1863, he proclaimed about three millions of bondmen to be free. In 1864, two hundred thousand of these freedmen were soldiers in the National army, fighting for the Government and their own freedom.

---

QUESTIONS.—26. What was done on the Mississippi? What can you tell about battles at Iuka and Corinth, and of the Confederates in Kentucky and Tennessee? 27. What can you tell about a battle at Murfreesboro? 28. What power did Congress give to President Lincoln? How did he use it? What can you say about slaves?

## THE GREAT CIVIL WAR, CONTINUED [1863].

29. Late in January, General Joseph Hooker was put in command of the Army of the Potomac, in the place of Burnside. Toward the end of April, he led them across the Rappahannock, above Fredericksburg ; and on the 2d and 3d of May, he had a severe fight with Lee in a place called the Wilderness, near Chancellorsville. The National army suffered severely, and they were compelled to go back to the other side of the river.



GENERAL R. E. LEE.

30. Early in June, Lee, with a large army, moved up the Shenandoah Valley, and crossed the Potomac into Maryland, closely watched by Hooker, who kept them from Washington and Baltimore. At the close of this month, General George G. Meade took Hooker's place, and soon afterward Lee pushed on into Pennsylvania. At the beginning of July, Meade fought Lee for three days at Gettysburg, and conquered him. Lee fled toward Virginia [July 4], and escaped with what was left of his army. By the middle of August, the Confederate army was beyond the Rappahannock, when for a long time the two armies confronted each other near that stream.

31. While these movements were going on in the vicinity of the Potomac, General Foster was very busy in North Carolina, struggling with General Hill for the mastery of a portion of the coast-region. At the same time, General

---

QUESTIONS.—29. What can you tell about Hooker's doings, and the battle of Chancellorsville? 30. Give an account of Lee's invasion of Maryland and Pennsylvania, and battle of Gettysburg. What followed? 31 What can you tell of doings on the North Carolina coast, and near Norfolk? What did General Wool do?

Longstreet, one of the best of Lee's commanders, was trying to drive the Nationals from Norfolk. That city had been captured by General Wool, in May, 1862, and the Nationals held it until the close of the war.

32. In April, 1863, Admiral Dupont and General Gillmore commenced a siege of Charleston, which lasted almost two years. The bombardments were frequent. Fort Sumter was reduced to a heap by the National shells, and the city was made a ruin. At the same time General Banks was in command of the Department of the Gulf, with his headquarters at New Orleans. He drove the Confederates out of a portion of Louisiana, westward of the Mississippi. He also captured Port Hudson, early in July, with more than six thousand prisoners. At the close of the year, troops from his army occupied a line on the Rio Grande, opposite Matamoras.



ADMIRAL PORTER.

33. At the close of 1862, it was made the business of General Grant to clear the Mississippi river-banks of the Confederates. Vicksburg was their strongest place, and he proceeded to attack that city, with the assistance of Admiral Porter and his fleet of gunboats. The place was surrounded late in May, and on the 4th of July it was surrendered to Grant, by General Pemberton, with more than thirty thousand Confederate troops. Then the Confederates lost the control of the Mississippi River, and were much weakened.

---

QUESTIONS.—32. What can you tell about the siege of Charleston? What can you tell about General Banks's movements in Louisiana?

33. What was General Grant expected to do? What did he do?

34. After sending troops to General Banks in Louisiana, and General Steele in Arkansas, and leaving General McPherson in command at Vicksburg, Grant hastened to the aid of Rosecrans, then at Chattanooga, in East Tennessee, in command of the Army of the Cumberland. Rosecrans had driven Bragg into Georgia, where he was joined by troops under General Longstreet, sent by General Lee. They turned upon Rosecrans, when the terrible fight known as the Battle of Chickamauga occurred, at the middle of September. The Nationals were beaten, and driven back to Chattanooga.

35. Grant reached Rosecrans in time to relieve him from great perils, and General George H. Thomas took command of the Army of the Cumberland. General Sherman joined them late in November, when a contest was begun which lasted two days. It is called the battle of Chattanooga. The Confederates were badly beaten [Nov. 25], and the Nationals soon gained control of a large part of Georgia and Alabama. Burnside was at Knoxville, Tennessee, at the same time. He was in danger of being captured by Longstreet, who went up from Bragg. Relief was sent to him; and Longstreet, driven off, fled back to the army of Lee in Virginia.

36. The war raged in Missouri and Arkansas during 1863, in many places, but no great battle was fought in those States. On the first of September, General Blunt took Fort Smith from the Confederates; and nine days afterward General Steele captured Little Rock, the capital of Arkansas.

37. In June, a noted guerilla chief, named Morgan,

---

QUESTIONS.—34. What did Grant do after taking Vicksburg? Give an account of what occurred near Chattanooga? 35. What can you tell about Grant, Rosecrans, and Sherman, and the battle of Chattanooga? What about Burnside and Longstreet? 36. What was done in Missouri and Arkansas, in 1863? 37. Give an account of Morgan in Indiana and Ohio.



with three thousand horsemen, went over the Ohio River into Indiana, and swept through the lower portions of that State and Ohio, to join Lee in Maryland, or Pennsylvania. He was captured [July 26, 1863], with nearly all of his men, in Ohio.

38. The National navy, which had rapidly grown to be a very large and powerful one, was employed in keeping ships from going in and out of the seaports of the Southern States. This is called blockading. The war-vessels also did great service on the Mississippi and other rivers in the Southwest, as well as on the coast, in assisting troops ; and they captured many ships from abroad, called blockade-runners, that tried to get in and out of the Southern ports.

#### THE GREAT CIVIL WAR, CONTINUED [1864].

39. The National armies were strong and cheerful at the beginning of 1864 ; and the Government had plenty of money to carry on the war. The first most important movement was by General Sherman, who marched from Vicksburg at the beginning of February, and going eastward, almost to Alabama, destroyed a great deal of public property, and liberated ten thousand slaves. General Seymour invaded Florida at the same time, but was beaten back by the Confederates, who met him at Olustee.

40. General A. J. Smith and Admiral Porter went up the Red River at the middle of March, and were joined by General Banks from New Orleans, who had marched an army across Western Louisiana. They had some sharp

---

QUESTIONS.—38. What have you to say about the National navy ? 39. What can' you say about the National armies and the Government ? Give an account of Sherman's march across Mississippi. What did General Seymour do ? 40. What can you tell about an expedition up the Red River, and its results ? What can you tell about Steele and Forrest ?

battles above Alexandria, and were obliged to return down the river. It was very difficult for Porter's fleet to get over the rapids at Alexandria, but they did so on the 11th of May, and vessels and army retreated to the Mississippi River. In the meantime General Steele had met with some misfortunes in Arkansas, and the Confederates under Forrest had invaded Tennessee and Kentucky.

41. Grant was made Lieutenant-General and General-in-Chief of all the armies of the Republic, in March [1864], and he ordered a forward movement of the larger ones at the beginning of May. That of the Potomac, under General Meade, crossed the Rapid Anna River and moved toward Richmond, accompanied by Grant. They fought Lee's army all the way to the James River, which they reached at



LIEUT.-GEN. GRANT.

the middle of June.

42. In the meantime General Butler had landed a large army at Bermuda Hundred, at the mouth of the Appomattox River. This was to assist Grant in crossing the James ; and then commenced the famous siege of Petersburg and Richmond.

43. Sherman with a large army left Chattanooga at the beginning of May, and fought his way against the Confederates, under General Joseph E. Johnston, to Atlanta, in Georgia. He besieged that city during the month of August, and captured it on the 2d of September.

---

QUESTIONS.—41. What can you tell about Grant's promotion and orders ? What did the army of the Potomac do ? 42. What did General Butler do, and what was accomplished ? 43. Give an account of Sherman's march to Atlanta.

44. Ever since the war was begun, the Confederates, helped by their friends in England, had kept one or more armed-ships at sea, called Privateers, capturing and destroying American ships. Among the worst of these were the *Sumter* and the *Alabama*. The latter was built and fitted out in England, and destroyed many American merchant-ships. Finally the *Kearsarge*, one of our national vessels, attacked the *Alabama* off the coast of France [June 19], and sent it to the bottom of the sea. The loyal people of the United States rejoiced very much, because of this triumph of a national vessel.

45. In July, a large number of the Confederates, under General Early, hastened down the Shenandoah Valley, crossed the Potomac into Maryland, and at one time it was thought that they would take Baltimore and Washington. They would have done so, had not General Wallace with a few troops fought them at Monocacy Creek [July 9], and kept them back until forces in Washington were prepared for them. They fled back to Virginia; but, before they went, they burnt the fine village of Chambersburg, in Pennsylvania.

46. Whilst Grant and Sherman were making their important movements on land, Farragut was preparing to attack Forts Gaines and Morgan, near Mobile. He made the attack toward the middle of August, and captured the forts [Aug. 23], with the



ADMIRAL FARRAGUT.

---

QUESTIONS.—44. What have you to say about pirate-ships, called privateers? 45. Give an account of Early's invasion of Maryland. How was he checked, and what did he do? 46. Give an account of doings near Mobile.

assistance of land-troops under General Granger. His fleet sailed into Mobile Bay, and the city of Mobile was cut off from any communication with the sea. This was a heavy blow for the Confederates.

47. During the autumn, General Sheridan broke the power of the Confederates under Early in the Shenandoah Valley. He gained a victory over him near Winchester, on the 19th of September, and others afterward. At the same time, General Hood, who commanded the Confederates opposed to Sherman, marched westward, and then invaded Tennessee. He went north, almost to Nashville. He had an army of about forty thousand men.

48. General Schofield fought and weakened Hood at Franklin [Nov. 30], Tennessee, at the close of November,



GENERAL THOMAS.

when the latter besieged Nashville. At the middle of December, Thomas marched out and attacked him. Hood and his army were driven away, and went with heavy loss to Alabama.

49. On Christmas day Fort Fisher, at the mouth of the Cape Fear River, was terribly bombarded by the fleet under

Admiral Porter. An attempt to take it by a land-force failed ; but on the 13th of January, 1865, a large number of troops, under General Terry, took the fort, with the assistance of the navy. The Nationals then went up the Cape Fear River, and captured Wilmington on the 21st February.

50. Early in November, Sherman commenced a grand

---

QUESTIONS.—47, 48. What did Sheridan do? What did Hood do? How was he driven out of Tennessee? 49. Give an account of the capture of Fort Fisher and Wilmington. 50. Give an account of Sherman's great march through the Carolinas.

march through Georgia and the Carolinas. He took the capital of Georgia on the 20th of November, and entered Savannah on the 21st of December. Then he crossed the Savannah River into South Carolina, and captured the capital of that State on the 17th February. The Confederates fled from Charleston the next day, when National colored troops entered that city. Sherman marched on into North Carolina; and at Goldsborough, his army joined others under Schofield and Terry, who had come from Newbern and Wilmington.



GENERAL SHERMAN.

51. During the early part of the spring of 1865, Sheridan beat Early's army into pieces, and so cut off supplies of food from Richmond, by destroying the railways and canal that led into it, that Lee's army was likely to be starved. Grant had held Lee fast at Petersburg and Richmond, since June the previous year. Lee now tried to escape by breaking through Grant's lines, but was made prisoner on the 9th of April, with his whole army.



GENERAL SHERIDAN.

52. Jefferson Davis, the chosen head of the Confederates, and other members of the so-called government at Richmond, fled into North Carolina. Soon afterward the

---

QUESTIONS.—51. What did Sheridan do in the spring of 1865? What did Lee try to do, and what happened? 52. What did Davis and other Secessionists do?



Confederate army under Johnston surrendered to Sherman, near Raleigh, in that State.

53. Already the Confederates at Mobile had been captured or driven away by General Canby, and their power in Alabama had been entirely broken by a cavalry force led by General J. H. Wilson, operating in aid of Canby. The last battle was fought near the Rio Grande, in Texas, on the 13th of May, 1865. The Civil War then ended.

54. A few days after the surrender of Lee's army, Mr. Lincoln, the President of the Republic, was murdered, at Washington City. But the Government went on as before,

for the Vice-President, Andrew Johnson, became acting President on the day [April 15] when Mr. Lincoln died.



ANDREW JOHNSON.

## SECTION XVI.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION. [1865-1869.]

1. By the death of Abraham Lincoln, Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, became the seventeenth President of the United States. He offered heavy rewards for the arrest of Jefferson Davis and some of his chief associ-

QUESTIONS.—53. What can you tell about the closing scenes of the War? 54. What dreadful thing occurred at Washington City, and what were the consequences? 1. What did President Johnson do? What can you tell about Jefferson Davis?



THEATRE  
of the  
CIVIL WAR



ates. Davis was then trying to escape from his country. He had got as far, toward the Gulf of Mexico, as the lower part of Georgia, when he was captured [May 10, 1865], and sent as a prisoner to Fortress Monroe, from which, after a long confinement, he was allowed to go free on giving security that he would appear for trial, when called for.

2. When the Civil War ended, there was great confusion in several States of the Union in which there had been insurrection. The first business of the Government was to bring order out of that confusion in those States, and to have every one of them properly represented in Congress.

3. But the President and Congress did not agree as to the best plan for doing the business. So they opposed each other, and the settlement of public affairs was long delayed. Congress wished to give all citizens of the United States, of whatever color or race, equal privileges, but the President did not. Congress having the right to make laws, made some that gave many new privileges to the slaves lately set free.

4. Strongly supported by the people, Congress carried out its plan, which was to do justice to all. By an amendment of the National Constitution, approved by the people, and declared on the 18th of December, 1865, slavery was forever forbidden in the Republic. By other acts, provision was made for securing to the late slaves the rights of citizens, as well as provision for their aid, and the help of suffering white people in the South.

5. Congress also provided, by law, for securing the safety of the Republic against its enemies who had lately made war upon it; and finally, by another amendment to the

---

QUESTIONS.—2. What was the state of the country at the end of the War? 3. How came Congress and the President to disagree? 4. What did Congress do? 5. What else did Congress do?

Constitution, which was approved in the summer of 1868, fair-play was secured to the late slaves, as citizens, and also the payment of the National debt, which, at the close of the War, amounted to more than three thousand million dollars. The President opposed all these measures, and vetoed them—that is, he refused to sign his name to the acts, and so prevented their becoming laws. But they were passed over his veto. See verse 4, page 179.

6. The House of Representatives finally charged the President [Feb. 22d, 1868], with high crimes and misdemeanors. This is called impeachment. The charges were put in the shape of Articles of Impeachment, and were adopted on the 2d of March. The President was put upon his trial before the Senate [March 30], and escaped conviction by one vote, less than the required two-thirds majority failing to convict him.

7. We have mentioned the breaking of the telegraph cable between America and Europe [verse 5, page 236], in 1858. In the summer of 1865, a new and lasting one was laid. The first communication through it was made on the 29th of July, and on the following day, Queen Victoria and President Johnson exchanged congratulations. In July, 1869, the United States and France were connected by a telegraphic cable stretching across the Atlantic, and President Grant and the Emperor of the French, exchanged congratulations. So early as October, 1862, telegraphic communication had been opened across the American continent between the coasts of the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

8. On the first of March, 1868, the Territory of Nevada was, by Congress, admitted into the Union, as a State.

---

QUESTIONS.—6. What did the House of Representatives do? Tell about the President's trial. 7. What more can you tell about the telegraph? 8. What can you tell about a new State and Territory?



The Government also added a new and extensive Territory to the Union, by the purchase, from Russia, of its possessions in the north-western extremity of North America, for seven million two hundred thousand dollars. It is known as the Territory of Alaska.

9. The Republican Party named General Ulysses S. Grant as their candidate for President of the United States, with Schuyler Colfax for Vice-President. The opposite, or Democratic party, named Horatio Seymour for President, and Francis P. Blair, Jr., for Vice-President. The election took place on the 3d of November, 1868, when Grant and Colfax were chosen to fill the two most exalted places in the gift of the people. They respectively took the oath of office and entered upon the duties thereof, on the 4th of March, 1869.



GRANT, AND HIS BIRTH-PLACE.

QUESTIONS—9. Whom did the Republican Party name as candidate for President? Who were named as the candidates of the Democratic Party? Who was elected President of the Republic in the fall of 1868?

## SECTION XVII.

## THE NATIONAL CONSTITUTION.

We have considered the causes which led to the construction of the National Constitution, in 1787 [page 176]; its adoption by the people of the United States as the organic law of the land, and the establishment of a National Government in accordance with its plan [page 177]. Let us now take it up and study it carefully, for it is the Great Charter of our Liberties. We will begin with the introductory remarks, or

## P R E A M B L E.

**Objects.** WE the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I.

## SECTION I.

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.

## SECTION II.

**1st Clause.**—The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

**QUESTIONS.**—What have we considered? What are the remarks introductory to the National Constitution called? Recite the Preamble to the Constitution. Who ordained and established the Constitution? For what purposes?

**ART. I. Legislative Department. SEC. I.** Recite Section I. In what body are all legislative powers vested? Of what does Congress consist?

**SEC. II.** Recite the *1st Clause*. How is the House of Representatives composed? How often and by whom are the Representatives chosen? What are the qualifications for an elector or voter?

*2d Clause.*—No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

**Qualification of Representatives.**

*3d Clause.*—Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

**Apportionment of Representatives.**

*4th Clause.*—When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

**Vacancies, how filled.**

*5th Clause.*—The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

**Speaker, how appointed.**

---

**QUESTIONS.—SEC. II.** Recite the *2d Clause*. What is said about the age of a Representative? How long must he have been a citizen of the United States? What is required in regard to his residence? What three qualifications must a Representative possess? Recite the *3d Clause*. How are Representatives and direct taxes apportioned among the several States? How are the respective numbers of the representative population to be determined? When was the first enumeration or census to be made, and how often thereafter? How many inhabitants, at least, are required for one representative? What number shall each State have? What number of representatives respectively were the States then in the Union entitled to? Of how many members, consequently, did the first House of Representatives consist? Recite the *4th Clause*. How are vacancies in the representation of a State to be filled? Recite the *5th Clause*. Who shall choose the officers of the House of Representatives?

## SECTION III.

*1st Clause.*—The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years ; and each senator from each State. shall have one vote.

*2d Clause.*—Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year ; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

*3d Clause.*—No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

*4th Clause.*—The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

*5th Clause.*—The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

---

QUESTIONS.—SEC. III. Recite the *1st Clause*. Of whom shall the Senate be composed ? By whom are the Senators chosen, and for what space of time ? How many votes is each Senator entitled to ? Recite the *2d Clause*. Into how many classes were the Senators at first divided ? In what order were their seats vacated ? What proportion of Senators are chosen every second year ? Under what conditions may the Executive or Governor of a State fill a vacancy in the Senate ? How long may a Senator so appointed fill the office ? How shall the vacancy then be filled ? Recite the *3d Clause*. At what age is a person eligible to be a Senator ? How long must he have been a citizen of the United States ? What is required concerning his residence ? What are the three requisites of a Senator ? Recite the *4th Clause*. Who shall be the President of the Senate ? When may he vote ? Recite the *5th Clause*. What officers shall the Senate choose ? What officers may they choose *pro tempore*, or for the time being, and under what conditions ?



*6th Clause.*—The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments: When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

**Senate, a court for trial of impeachments.**

*7th Clause.*—Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States: but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.

**Judgment in case of conviction.**

#### SECTION IV.

*1st Clause.*—The times, places and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

**Elections of Senators and Representatives.**

*2d Clause.*—The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

**Meeting of Congress.**

#### SECTION V.

*1st Clause.*—Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller

**Organization of Congress.**

**QUESTIONS.**—**SEC. III.** Recite the *6th Clause*. What sole power has the Senate? What sole power is given to the House of Representatives by the *5th Clause*, **Section II.**, **Article I.**, of the Constitution? Under what conditions shall the Senate sit for the trial of impeachment? When shall the Chief-Justice of the United States preside in the Senate? What proportion of the Senate shall be necessary to a conviction? Recite the *7th Clause*. In cases of impeachment, how far may judgment extend? To what is the convicted person further liable?

**SEC. IV.** Recite the *1st Clause*. What prescription is allowed to each State legislature in regard to elections for members of the Congress? What may the Congress do in the matter? Recite the *2d Clause*. How often and at what time shall the Congress assemble? How may a different day be appointed?

**SEC. V.** Recite the *1st Clause*. Of what may each House of Congress be the judge? What proportion shall constitute a quorum to do business?



number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

**2d Clause.**—Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

**3d Clause.**—Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

**4th Clause.**—Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

## SECTION VI.

**1st Clause.**—The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

**2d Clause.**—No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been cre-

**QUESTIONS.**—**SEC. V.** *1st Clause.* What power is given to a smaller number? What power is given these concerning absent members? Recite the *2d Clause.* What powers are given each House over its rules of proceedings? What power is given to each for enforcing its own rules? Recite the *3d Clause.* What is required of each House concerning its proceedings? What discretionary power is given to each House concerning its journals? When shall the yeas and nays in each House be entered on the journal? Recite the *4th Clause.* What requirement is made concerning the adjournment of either House? How are they restricted as to the place to which either may adjourn?

**SEC. VI.** Recite the *1st Clause.* What provision is made for the compensation of the members of Congress? What privileges are members of Congress entitled to? What are the exceptions? How is freedom in speech and debate secured to members of Congress? Recite the *2d Clause.* How are members of Congress restricted concerning the holding of civil offices?

ated, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

## SECTION VII.

*1st Clause.*—All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Sen- **Bills, how origin-**  
ate may propose or concur with amendments **ated.**  
as on other bills.

*2d Clause.*—Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the **How bills become laws.**  
President of the United States. If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays; and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

---

QUESTIONS.—SEC. VI. *2d Clause.* What will prevent a person being a member of Congress?

SEC. VII. Recite the *1st Clause*. In which House of Congress shall revenue bills originate? What may the Senate do? Recite the *2d Clause*. What shall be done with a bill after it has passed both Houses of Congress? What must the President do with it? What shall the House to which the bill may be returned with the President's objections or *veto* do? When shall the bill be sent to the other House? What shall accompany the bill? What shall the other House do? If the bill shall be approved by two-thirds of both Houses, what then? How shall the votes of the Houses be determined, in such cases? What shall be entered in the journals? Under what other conditions may a bill become a law? What is the exception? Recite the *3d Clause*. What must be done with every order, resolution, and vote, requiring the concurrence of both Houses, before they shall take effect?

*3d Clause.*—Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of **Approval and veto** powers of the President) shall be presented to the President of the United States ; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

## SECTION VIII.

*1st Clause.*—The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States ; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States ;

*2d Clause.*—To borrow money on the credit of the United States ;

*3d Clause.*—To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes ;

*4th Clause.*—To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States ;

*5th Clause.*—To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures ;

*6th Clause.*—To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States ;

*7th Clause.*—To establish post-offices and post-roads ;

*8th Clause.*—To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;

**QUESTIONS.**—**SEC. VII.** *3d Clause.* What is the exception ? How may such orders, resolutions, and votes be made effective, notwithstanding the President's veto ?

**SEC. VIII.** Recite the *1st Clause.* What powers are given to the Congress concerning taxes, duties, imposts, excises, debts and the common defense of the United States ? What is said about the uniformity of duties, imposts, and excises ? What power is given to Congress by the *2d Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *3d Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *4th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *5th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *6th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *7th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *8th Clause* ?

*9th Clause.*—To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court ;

*10th Clause.*—To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations ;

*11th Clause.*—To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water ;

*12th Clause.*—To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years ;

*13th Clause.*—To provide and maintain a navy ;

*14th Clause.*—To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

*15th Clause.*—To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions ;

*16th Clause.*—To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

*17th Clause.*—To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings ;—And

*18th Clause.*—To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

---

QUESTIONS.—SEC. VIII. What power is given to Congress by the *9th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *10th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *11th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *12th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *13th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *14th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *15th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *16th Clause* ? What is reserved to the States respectively ? What power is given to Congress by the *17th Clause* ? What power is given to Congress by the *18th Clause* ?



## SECTION IX.

**1st Clause.**—The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

**Immigrants, how admitted.**  
**2d Clause.**—The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

**Habeas Corpus.**  
**Attainder.**

**3d Clause.**—No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

**4th Clause.**—No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

**Taxes.**

**5th Clause.**—No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

**6th Clause.**—No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

**Regulations regarding duties.**

**7th Clause.**—No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

**Money, how drawn.**

**8th Clause.**—No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept

**Titles of nobility prohibited.**

**QUESTIONS.—SEC. IX.** Recite the *1st Clause*. What restrictions were imposed upon Congress concerning the migration or importation of certain persons, meaning slaves, from Africa or elsewhere? What was the limit of that restriction? What tax or duty might be laid? Recite the *2d Clause*. What is said concerning the suspension of the privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus*? What does the *3d Clause* prohibit? What is said in the *4th Clause* about taxation? What does the *5th Clause* prohibit concerning exportations from any State? What does the *6th Clause* provide concerning the commerce between the States? What is provided in the *7th Clause* in relation to the drawing of money from the Treasury, and a statement and account of receipts and expenditures? Recite the *8th Clause*. What is said concerning titles of nobility?



of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

## SECTION X.

*1st Clause.*—No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payments of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

**Powers of States defined.**

*2d Clause.*—No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws ; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States ; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

*3d Clause.*—No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships-of-war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.

## SECTION I.

*1st Clause.*—The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected, as follows :

**Executive power, in whom vested.**

*2d Clause.*—Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State

**Presidential electors.**

QUESTIONS.—SEC. IX. *8th Clause.* What restrictions concerning favors from foreigners are laid upon National officers ?

SEC. X. What restrictions are laid upon each State by the *1st Clause* ? What restrictions are laid upon each State by the *2d Clause* ? What restrictions are laid upon each State by the *3d Clause* ?

ART II. *Executive Department.* SEC. I. Recite the *1st Clause*. In whom is the executive power of the Republic vested ? What is the term of office of the President and Vice-President ? Recite the *2d Clause*. What shall each State do ? What shall be the number of electors ?

may be entitled in the Congress : but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

*3d Clause.*—The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their  
**Time of choosing** votes ; which day shall be the same through-  
**electors.** out the United States.

*4th Clause.*—No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President ; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years resident within the United States.

*5th Clause.*—In the case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or  
**Resort in case of** inability to discharge the powers and duties  
**his disability.** of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

*6th Clause.*—The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall  
**Salary of the Pres-** neither be increased nor diminished during  
**ident.** the period for which he shall have been

---

QUESTIONS.—SEC. I. *2d Clause.* Who may not be an elector ?

Now turn to the Twelfth Amendment of the Constitution, on page 278. Where shall the electors meet ? How shall they vote ? What restriction is made ? How shall their ballots be made out ? What lists shall they make ? What shall they do with them ? What shall the President of the Senate do ? Who shall be declared the President under certain conditions ? What are those conditions ? When no choice shall be made by the electors, by whom is the President chosen ? From how many and what candidates must the House of Representatives choose a President ? How shall the votes be taken ? What shall constitute a quorum ? What is necessary to a choice ? In the event of the House not choosing a President before the 4th of March following, who shall act as President ? How shall the Vice-President be chosen ? In the event of no choice by the electors, how shall he be chosen ? Under what conditions may the Senate make the choice ? What is said about the eligibility of a person for Vice-President ? Recite the *3d Clause* of Section I., Article II. What may Congress determine concerning electors ? What is said about the day on which electors shall vote ? Recite the *4th Clause*. What is said about the birthplace of a person being eligible for the office of President ? What shall be his age, at least, and the time of his residence in the United States ? Recite the *5th Clause*. On whom shall the office of President devolve, in the event of the death or disability of that officer ? What power is given to Congress for filling the places of President and Vice-President ? Recite the *6th Clause*. What is said concerning the President's compensation ? What restrictions are laid upon him ?

elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

*7th Clause.*—Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

**Oath of Office.**

## SECTION II.

*1st Clause.*—The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

**Duties of the President.**

*2d Clause.*—He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

**His power to make treaties, appoint ambassadors, judges, etc.**

*3d Clause.*—The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

**May fill vacancies.**

**QUESTIONS.**—**SEC. I.** What does the *7th Clause* declare that the President shall do? **SEC. II.** Recite the *1st Clause*. Of what, and under what circumstances, shall the President be a commander-in-chief? What may he require of the officers of the executive departments? What powers are given him concerning reprieves and pardons? What is the exception? What power is given to the President by the *2d Clause*? What proviso is made? What officers of the government shall he nominate, and, by and with the advice of the Senate, appoint? What may the Congress do concerning appointments? Recite the *3d Clause*. What power is given to the President for filling vacancies? What is the duration of such commissions?

## SECTION III.

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend  
**Power to convene Congress.** to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

## SECTION IV.

The President, Vice President and all civil officers of the  
**How officers may be removed.** United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

## ARTICLE III.

## SECTION I.

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in  
**Judicial power, how vested.** one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services, a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. III. What information is the President required to give to the Congress? What recommendations shall he make? What may he do on extraordinary occasions? When may the President adjourn the Congress? What is his duty respecting ambassadors? What is his duty concerning the execution of the laws, and the commissioning of government officers?

SEC. IV. For what crimes may all civil officers of the Government be removed, and by what method?

ART. III. *Judicial Department.* SEC. I. In what body or bodies is the judicial power of the Republic vested? By what tenure do the judges hold their offices? What is said about compensation for their services?



## SECTION II.

*1st Clause.*—The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls ;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ;—to controversies between two or more States ;—between a State and citizens of another State ;—between citizens of different States ;—between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

To what cases it extends.

*2d Clause.*—In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

*3d Clause.*—The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury ; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

Rules respecting trials.

## SECTION III.

*1st Clause.*—Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

Treason defined.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. II. Recite the *1st Clause*. How many subjects are named, in which the United States courts have jurisdiction ? Name the 1st. Name the 2d. Name the 3d. Name the 4th. Name the 5th. Name the 6th. Name the 7th. Name the 8th. Name the 9th. Recite the *2d Clause*. In what cases shall the Supreme Court have original jurisdiction ? What is its jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, in all the other cases mentioned ? What may be exceptions ? Recite the *3d Clause*. By whom shall all crimes be tried ? What is the exception ? Where shall such trials be held ? What may the Congress direct ?

SEC. III. Recite the *1st Clause*. In what does treason consist ?



*2d Clause.*—No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

*3d Clause.*—The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV.

### SECTION I.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

**Rights of States**  
to public faith,  
defined.

### SECTION II.

*1st Clause.*—The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

**Privileges of citi-**  
zens.

*2d Clause.*—A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

**Executive requisition.**

*3d Clause.*—No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

**Law regulating service or labor.**

**QUESTIONS.**—**SEC. III.** Recite the *2d Clause*. What is required to convict a person of treason? Recite the *3d Clause*. What power is given to Congress in the matter of treason? How are the consequences of attainder of treason limited?

**ART. IV. SEC. I.** Recite this section. How are the public acts of the several States to be treated in each State? What may Congress do in relation to them?

**SEC. II.** What does the *1st Clause* declare concerning the privileges and immunities of citizens? Recite the *2d Clause*. Who shall be delivered up for removal from one State to another, on the demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled? Where shall he be removed to? What does the *3d Clause* declare about fugitives from service or labor, meaning slaves, and apprentices bound by indentures?

## SECTION III.

*1st Clause.*—New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union ; but no new State shall be **New States, how** formed or erected within the jurisdiction of **formed and admit-** any other State ; nor any State be formed **ted.** by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

*2d Clause.*—The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations **Power of Congress** respecting the territory or other property **over public lands.** belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

## SECTION IV.

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and **Republican govern-** shall protect each of them against invasion, **ment guaranteed.** and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amend- **Constitution, how** ments to this Constitution, or, on the appli- **to be amended.** cation of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the leg-

QUESTIONS.—SEC. III. Recite the *1st Clause*. By whom may new States be admitted into the Union ? What restrictions are applied in the formation of new States ? Recite the *2d Clause*. What power is given to Congress by this clause ? What construction, as to claims, is not to be put upon any part of the Constitution ?

SEC. IV. Recite this section ? What shall the United States, or National Government guarantee to every State ? In what two ways is the National Government bound to protect each State ?

ARTICLE V. Of what does this article treat ? In what ways may amendments to the Constitution be proposed ? How shall amendments be made a part of the Constitution ?

islatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress, provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

## ARTICLE VI.

*1st Clause.*—All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

*2d Clause.*—This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof ; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land ; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

*3d Clause.*—The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation, to support this Constitution ; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

---

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE V. What restrictions were imposed concerning the *1st* and *2d* Clauses of the ninth section of the first article ? Recite those clauses ? Have those restrictions any force now ? Why not ? What is said of the equality of the States in the Senate ?

ARTICLE VI. Recite the *1st Clause*. What is said of the validity of former public debts ? Recite the *2d Clause*. What is declared to be the supreme law of the land ? By what are the judges in every State bound ? Recite the *3d Clause*. Who shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support the National Constitution ? What is said concerning religious tests ?

## ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Ratification.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the States present the seventeenth day of September in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names. [Signed by the members of the convention.]

## AMENDMENTS.

At the first session of the First Congress, begun and held in the city of New York, on Wednesday, the 4th of March, 1789, many amendments to the National Constitution were offered for consideration. The Congress proposed ten of them to the legislatures of the several States. These were ratified by the constitutional number of State legislatures by the middle of December, 1791. Five other amendments have since been proposed and duly ratified, and have become with the other ten a part of the National Constitution. THE FOLLOWING ARE THE AMENDMENTS :

## ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people

Freedom in religion  
and speech, and  
of the press.

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE VII. What does this article declare? Where, and by whose consent, and when was the National Constitution formed? Who were the witnesses to it?

AMENDMENTS. When and where were amendments to the Constitution offered to the Congress? What did the Congress do? How many amendments were ratified? What others were proposed, and when were they ratified? What can you tell about a thirteenth amendment?

ARTICLE I. Recite the first amendment to the Constitution. What subjects are the Congress prohibited from making laws upon?

peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress of grievances.

## ARTICLE II.

A well regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

**Militia.**

## ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

**Soldiers.**

## ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

**Search warrants.**

## ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war and public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor to be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

**Capital crimes.**

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE II. Recite this article. What is declared concerning the militia, and rights of the people?

ARTICLE III. Recite this Article.

ARTICLE IV. Recite this article. What right are the people to be secure in? What is declared concerning warrants?

ARTICLE V. What is declared concerning the holding of persons to answer for alleged offenses? What is said about a second trial for the same offense? In what case shall a person not be compelled to testify in court? What guarantee of protection is promised? When only can private property be taken for the public use?



## ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

Trial by jury.

## ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise reëxamined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of common law.

Suits at common law.

## ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

Bail.

## ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Certain rights defined.

## ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

Rights reserved.

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE VI. What right shall a person accused of crime enjoy? What right as to the witnesses that may appear against him? What method is secured to him for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and the obtaining of counsel?

ARTICLE VII. In what civil cases shall the right of trial by jury be preserved? In what way shall the reëxamination of facts tried by a jury, be made?

ARTICLE VIII. What does this article declare?

ARTICLE IX. What does this article declare?

ARTICLE X. What does this article declare?

## ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

Judicial power  
limited.

## ARTICLE XII.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves ; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate ;—the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted ;—the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE XI. What does this article declare ?

ARTICLE XII. What does this article declare ? In what connection have we considered the Twelfth Article of the Constitution, which relates to the election of President and Vice-President of the United States ?

right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President ; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

## ARTICLE XIII.

### SECTION I.

Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, **Slavery prohibited.** or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

### SECTION II.

Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

## ARTICLE XIV.

### SECTION I.

All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge **Citizens and their rights.** the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States ; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty or property, without due pro-

cess of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

## SECTION II.

Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to **Adjustment of re-** any of the male inhabitants of such State, **presentation to the** being twenty-one years of age, and citizens **elective franchise.** of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

## SECTION III.

No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

## SECTION IV.

The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States

**Treatment of  
public debts.**

nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave ; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

#### SECTION V.

Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

### ARTICLE XV.

#### SECTION I.

The right of the citizens of the United States shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

#### SECTION II.

The Congress shall have power to enforce this article, by appropriate legislation.

---

QUESTION.—ARTICLE XV.—What does this Article declare ?



## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

### THE INDIANS.

	PAGE
1. What can you tell about Columbus and the Indians ? . . . .	3
2. What about their language, habits, religion, government and fate ? . . . .	4

### DISCOVERIES.

1. What can you tell about Columbus and other early discoverers ? . . . .	6
2. What did Columbus desire, and what was done for him ? . . . .	7
3. Tell about the first voyage of Columbus and its results. . . . .	8
4. What did another Italian navigator do ? . . . .	9
5. What was the origin of the name of America ? . . . .	9
6. What can you tell about the discovery of Florida ? . . . .	10
7. What did Spanish adventurers do ? . . . .	10
8. What did kings and merchants now desire ? . . . .	10
9. What can you tell about navigators named Cabot ? . . . .	11
10. Give an account of Verrazzani's discoveries. . . . .	12
11. Give an account of Cartier's voyages and discoveries. . . . .	12
12. What can you tell about civil war in France, and Coligny ? . . . .	13
13. Give an account of the Huguenots in Florida. . . . .	14
14. What can you tell about English navigators and Queen Elizabeth ? . . . .	15
15. Give an account of the doings of Gilbert and Raleigh. . . . .	16
16. What happened to people sent to settle in America ? . . . .	17
17. What did Raleigh do, and what was his fate ? . . . .	18
18. What can you tell about other English navigators ? . . . .	18
19. What can you tell about French settlements ? . . . .	18
20. Give an account of Hudson and his voyages. . . . .	19
21. Tell about his discoveries and his fate. . . . .	20

### SETTLEMENTS.

1. What have you to say about a settlement and a colony ? . . . .	21
2. What did the English claim ? . . . .	21
3. What can you tell about companies formed for settlements in America ? . . . .	22
4. Give an account of the first English settlement in America. . . . .	23
5. Tell about the sufferings of the settlers. . . . .	24
6. What can you tell about Pocahontas and Captain Smith ? . . . .	25
7. Tell about Smith's energy and his coast voyage. . . . .	25
8. What pleasant thing happened at Jamestown ? . . . .	25
9. What can you tell about the settlers and Indians ? . . . .	26
10. What more about Pocahontas ? . . . .	26
11. Give an account of the founding of the Virginia Colony. . . . .	28
12. Tell about the Dutch in America. . . . .	28
13. Give an account of Dutch settlements in America. . . . .	29
14. What can you tell about adventurers on the New England coast ? . . . .	30
15. What can you tell about religious movements in England ? . . . .	31
16. Give an account of the Puritans. . . . .	32
17. What can you tell about the "Pilgrims" ? . . . .	33
18. Give an account of their first experience in the wilderness. . . . .	34
19. What can you tell about settlements in New Hampshire ? . . . .	34
20. What can you tell about Lord Baltimore ? . . . .	35
21. Give an account of the settlement of Roman Catholics in America. . . . .	36
22. Tell about the founding of the Maryland Colony. . . . .	36
23. What can you tell about the Connecticut River ? . . . .	37

	PAGE
24. Tell about the first settlements in Connecticut, and the Indians.	38
25. Give an account of war with Indians in Connecticut.	39
26. Tell about the New Haven settlement.	40
27. What can you tell about Roger Williams?	40
28. Give an account of the settlement of Rhode Island.	41
29. What can you tell about settlements on the Delaware River?	42
30. Give an account of the first settlements in New Jersey.	43
31. What can you tell about the Quakers?	43
32. Give an account of the settling of Pennsylvania.	44
33. Tell about the first settlements in North Carolina.	45
34. What can you tell about settlements in South Carolina?	45
35. What caused a plan for a settlement in Georgia?	46
36. Give an account of Oglethorpe and the Georgia settlers.	47
37. Tell about the Indians at Savannah.	47

COLONIES.

1. Give an account of the growth of the Virginia colony.	48
2. What can you tell about troubles with the Indians?	49
3. What change in the Virginia government occurred?	49
4. Give an account of a civil war in Virginia, and its cause.	50
5. What political changes occurred in England?	51
6. What can you tell more about the Virginia colony?	51
7. What can you tell about the "Pilgrims" and Indians?	52
8. What can you tell about the colonists and London merchants?	52
9. What can you tell about Puritan settlers at Salem and Boston?	53
10. How did the Puritans treat those who differed from them?	54
11. What can you tell about religious disputes at Boston?	54
12. What did John Eliot do?	55
13. What did King Charles the First do?	55
14. What can you tell about a confederation of colonies?	55
15. What have you to say about the Massachusetts people?	56
16. How did the Puritans treat the Quakers?	56
17. What can you tell about taxing the New Englanders?	57
18. Give an account of the beginning of "King Philip's War."	58
19. Give a further account of the war.	59
20. What have you to say about British kings and the New England people?	59
21. What can you tell about a revolution in England?	60
22. What caused King William's War?	60
23. Tell about a sad event at Schenectada.	60
24. Tell about an expedition against Quebec.	61
25. What political changes took place in New England?	61
26. What caused "Queen Anne's War?"	62
27. What did the French and Indians do?	62
28. Give an account of another expedition against Quebec.	63
29. What caused "King George's War?"	64
30. Give an account of the capture of Louisburg.	64
31. What occurred on Manhattan Island?	65
32. Tell about troubles between the Dutch, and other settlers and Indians.	66
33. Tell about a massacre of Indians at Hoboken.	66
34. What can you tell about Stuyvesant and the Swedes on the Delaware?	67
35. Tell about disagreements between Stuyvesant and his people.	68
36. What changes in government took place in New Netherland (New York)?	68
37. Tell about the recovery of New Netherland by the Dutch.	69
38. What can you tell about public affairs in New York?	69
39. How was the liberty of the press vindicated?	70
40. Give an account of representative government in Maryland.	71
41. Tell about civil wars and toleration in Maryland.	71
42. How did the Protestants in Maryland do wrong?	72
43. Tell about further troubles in Maryland.	72
44. What change in government took place in Maryland?	73
45. What can you tell about the Dutch and the Connecticut people?	73
46. How came difficulties to arise between Connecticut and Rhode Island?	74
47. What can you tell about Governor Andros?	74
48. Give an account of the Connecticut charter, and the "Charter Oak."	76
49. Tell about the relations between Massachusetts and Rhode Island.	77

	PAGE
50. What can you tell about Newport ? . . . . .	78
51. What can you say about the colony of New Jersey ? . . . .	78
52. What can you tell about the owners of New Jersey ? . . . .	79
53. Give an account of William Penn and his American province. . . .	80
54. Give a further account of Penn and Pennsylvania. . . . .	81
55. Tell about a form of government for the Carolinas. . . . .	82
56. What more have you to say about the Carolinas ? . . . .	82
57. What can you tell about French and English in South Carolina ? . .	83
58. What have you to say about Sothel and Archdale ? . . . .	83
59. Give an account of troubles with Indians in North Carolina. . . .	84
60. Tell about troubles between the South Carolinians and their enemies. .	85
61. Tell how the Carolinas came to be royal provinces, and were united. .	86
62. Give an account of the colony of Georgia. . . . .	87
63. Tell about Oglethorpe, Wesley, and Whitefield, in Georgia. . . .	87
64. Give an account of Oglethorpe's warfare with the Spaniards. . . .	88
65. What have you to say about the general condition of Georgia then ? .	89

## FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. Give an account of the origin of the French and Indian War. . . .	90
2. What can you tell about Washington's mission ? . . . .	91
3. Give an account of hostilities between the French and Virginians. . .	91
4. Tell about a Convention at Albany. . . . .	92
5. Give an account of preparations and movements against the French. .	92
6. Tell about a sharp battle and death of Braddock. . . . .	92
7. What can you tell about the expeditions of Shirley and Johnston ? .	94
8. Give an account of a campaign against Quebec. . . . .	95
9. What can you tell about Oswego, and the strengthening of other posts ?	96
10. Give an account of the tardy movements of Loudoun. . . . .	97
11. Give an account of the siege and capture of Fort William Henry. . .	98
12. Tell about expeditions against Louisburg and Ticonderoga. . . .	99
13. What military operations took place in northern New York ? . . .	100
14. Tell about the capture of Fort Du Quesne. . . . .	100
15. What can you tell about Amherst's campaign ? . . . .	101
16. Give an account of expeditions against Niagara and Quebec. . . .	102
17. Tell about fighting at Quebec, and death of Wolfe and Montcalm. .	103
18. Give an account of the capture of Montreal, and end of the war. . .	104
19. Tell about troubles with the Indians in the South and the Northwest. .	105

## THE REVOLUTION.

1. How does the story of the Revolution affect Americans ? . . . .	106
2. What have we observed in our studies ? . . . .	106
3. What have you to say about the feelings of the Americans at the close of the French and Indian War ? . . . .	107
4. How did the British Government try to tax them wrongfully ? . . .	107
5. What can you tell about stamps and the Stamp Act ? . . . .	108
6. Tell about Patrick Henry's stirring words. . . . .	108
7. What was done in opposition to the Stamp Act ? . . . .	109
8. What other tax was laid, and what was the effect ? . . . .	110
9. Tell how English and Colonial officers treated the Americans. . . .	111
10. Tell the story of Boston boys and General Gage. . . . .	112
11. Give an account of the "Boston Massacre" and its cause. . . .	112
12. Tell how the people resisted taxation. . . . .	113
13. Tell all about the tea tax, and events in Boston Harbor. . . .	114
14. How were the inhabitants of Boston punished ? . . . .	115
15. What can you tell about Committees of Correspondence ? . . . .	115
16. Give an account of the gathering of a Continental Congress. . . .	116
17. What did the Americans do in the summer of 1774 ? . . . .	117
18. What events occurred in Massachusetts ? . . . .	118
19. Give an account of the first skirmishes and bloodshed of the Revolution. .	119
20. Tell about the capture of Ticonderoga. . . . .	120
21. Give an account of the Battle of Bunker's Hill. . . . .	121
22. Tell how the patriots were aroused throughout the country. . . .	122

	PAGE
23. How did the Americans prepare for war ? . . . . .	123
24. Tell about Washington and the Army. . . . .	123
25. Give an account of an expedition against Canada. . . . .	124
26. Tell about Arnold's wonderful march. . . . .	125
27. What can you tell about the siege of Quebec ? . . . . .	125
28. What occurred in Lower Virginia ? . . . . .	126
29. What can you tell about the words <i>Whig</i> and <i>Tory</i> ? . . . . .	126
30. Give an account of Continental money. . . . .	127
31. What preparations were made for war by both parties ? . . . . .	128
32. Tell about Washington driving the British from Boston. . . . .	128
33. Give an account of the movements of Washington and Clinton. . . . .	129
34. Tell about the attack on Fort Moultrie. . . . .	129
35. What can you tell about preparations to form an independent nation ? . . . . .	130
36. What have you to say about the Declaration of Independence ? . . . . .	131
37. Give an account of military operations at and near New York. . . . .	132
38. Tell about the American Army leaving New York. . . . .	132
39. Give an account of the battle at White Plains. . . . .	133
40. Tell about the capture of Fort Washington, and life in prison ships. . . . .	133
41. What can you tell about Washington's operations on the Delaware ? . . . . .	134
42. What have you to say about the acts of Parliament and Congress ? . . . . .	135
43. Tell about Articles of Confederation, and events at Trenton. . . . .	136
44. Give an account of Washington's retreat and battle at Princeton. . . . .	137
45. Tell how the British were driven out of New Jersey, and operations there. . . . .	137
46. Give an account of marauding expeditions by Americans and British. . . . .	138
47. What measures did the British plan for subduing the Americans ? . . . . .	139
48. Tell about the operations of Generals Howe and Burgoyne. . . . .	139
49. What can you tell about Lafayette ? . . . . .	139
50. Tell about the Battle of Brandywine. . . . .	140
51. Give an account of operations near Philadelphia. . . . .	140
52. Tell about a battle at Germantown, and march to Valley Forge. . . . .	141
53. Tell about stirring events near Lake Champlain. . . . .	141
54. What can you tell of the movements of General Schuyler ? . . . . .	142
55. Tell about the Battle of Bennington, and the story of Jane McCrea. . . . .	142
56. What can you tell about important events in the Mohawk Valley ? . . . . .	143
57. Tell about the capture of Burgoyne and Forts Clinton and Montgomery. . . . .	144
58. What effects did these events produce ? . . . . .	144
59. What can you tell about the army at Valley Forge ? . . . . .	145
60. Give an account of the evacuation of Philadelphia by the British. . . . .	146
61. What can you tell about a battle in New Jersey ? . . . . .	146
62. Give an account of the movements of Washington after that battle. . . . .	147
63. What can you tell about efforts to drive the British from Rhode Island ? . . . . .	148
64. What did Tories and Indians do in Pennsylvania and New York ? . . . . .	148
65. What can you tell about a British army in the South ? . . . . .	149
66. What was the condition of the Americans at the beginning of 1779 ? . . . . .	150
67. Can you give an account of operations in Georgia ? . . . . .	151
68. What can you tell of the British marching against Charleston ? . . . . .	151
69. Can you give an account of British marauding expeditions ? . . . . .	152
70. Tell about the capture of Stony Point and fort at Jersey City. . . . .	153
71. What can you tell about hostilities beyond the Alleghany Mountains ? . . . . .	154
72. Give an account of Sullivan's campaign against the Senecas. . . . .	154
73. What can you tell about a siege of Savannah ? . . . . .	154
74. What did Lafayette do in France, and what was the effect ? . . . . .	155
75. Can you give an account of some naval preparations ? . . . . .	156
76. Tell about some naval engagements on the ocean. . . . .	157
77. Tell about preparations for an attack on, and defense of, Charleston. . . . .	158
78. Can you give an account of the siege and capture of Charleston ? . . . . .	159
79. What can you tell about the renewal of war in South Carolina ? . . . . .	160
80. Can you give an account of a battle near Camden ? . . . . .	161
81. What did Cornwallis then do, and what occurred at King's Mountain ? . . . . .	161
82. What can you tell about partisan leaders ? . . . . .	162
83. Tell about operations in New Jersey, and a French fleet at Newport. . . . .	162
84. Can you give an account of Arnold's treason and its results ? . . . . .	163
85. What did the British do ? . . . . .	164
86. What have you to say about the American soldiers ? . . . . .	165
87. Can you give an account of Arnold's operations in Virginia ? . . . . .	166
88. What can you tell about General Greene in the South ? . . . . .	166
89. What can you tell about a battle at the Cowpens ? . . . . .	167
90. Can you tell about Cornwallis's famous pursuit of Morgan and Greene ? . . . . .	167



	PAGE
50. What can you tell about Newport ? . . . .	78
51. What can you say about the colony of New Jersey ? . . . .	78
52. What can you tell about the owners of New Jersey ? . . . .	79
53. Give an account of William Penn and his American province. . . .	80
54. Give a further account of Penn and Pennsylvania. . . . .	81
55. Tell about a form of government for the Carolinas. . . . .	82
56. What more have you to say about the Carolinas ? . . . .	82
57. What can you tell about French and English in South Carolina ? . .	83
58. What have you to say about Sothel and Archdale ? . . . .	83
59. Give an account of troubles with Indians in North Carolina. . . .	84
60. Tell about troubles between the South Carolinians and their enemies. .	85
61. Tell how the Carolinas came to be royal provinces, and were united. .	86
62. Give an account of the colony of Georgia. . . . .	87
63. Tell about Oglethorpe, Wesley, and Whitefield, in Georgia. . . .	87
64. Give an account of Oglethorpe's warfare with the Spaniards. . . .	88
65. What have you to say about the general condition of Georgia then ? .	89

## FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. Give an account of the origin of the French and Indian War. . . .	90
2. What can you tell about Washington's mission ? . . . .	91
3. Give an account of hostilities between the French and Virginians. . .	91
4. Tell about a Convention at Albany. . . . .	92
5. Give an account of preparations and movements against the French. . .	92
6. Tell about a sharp battle and death of Braddock. . . . .	92
7. What can you tell about the expeditions of Shirley and Johnston ? . .	94
8. Give an account of a campaign against Quebec. . . . .	95
9. What can you tell about Oswego, and the strengthening of other posts ?	96
10. Give an account of the tardy movements of Londoun. . . . .	97
11. Give an account of the siege and capture of Fort William Henry. . . .	98
12. Tell about expeditions against Louisburg and Ticonderoga. . . .	99
13. What military operations took place in northern New York ? . . . .	100
14. Tell about the capture of Fort Du Quesne. . . . .	100
15. What can you tell about Amherst's campaign ? . . . .	101
16. Give an account of expeditions against Niagara and Quebec. . . .	102
17. Tell about fighting at Quebec, and death of Wolfe and Montcalm. . .	103
18. Give an account of the capture of Montreal, and end of the war. . . .	104
19. Tell about troubles with the Indians in the South and the Northwest. .	105

## THE REVOLUTION.

1. How does the story of the Revolution affect Americans ? . . . .	106
2. What have we observed in our studies ? . . . .	106
3. What have you to say about the feelings of the Americans at the close of the French and Indian War ? . . . .	107
4. How did the British Government try to tax them wrongfully ? . . . .	107
5. What can you tell about stamps and the Stamp Act ? . . . .	108
6. Tell about Patrick Henry's stirring words. . . . .	108
7. What was done in opposition to the Stamp Act ? . . . .	109
8. What other tax was laid, and what was the effect ? . . . .	110
9. Tell how English and Colonial officers treated the Americans. . . .	111
10. Tell the story of Boston boys and General Gage. . . . .	112
11. Give an account of the "Boston Massacre" and its cause. . . . .	112
12. Tell how the people resisted taxation. . . . .	113
13. Tell all about the tea tax, and events in Boston Harbor. . . . .	114
14. How were the inhabitants of Boston punished ? . . . .	115
15. What can you tell about Committees of Correspondence ? . . . .	115
16. Give an account of the gathering of a Continental Congress. . . .	116
17. What did the Americans do in the summer of 1774 ? . . . .	117
18. What events occurred in Massachusetts ? . . . .	118
19. Give an account of the first skirmishes and bloodshed of the Revolution. .	119
20. Tell about the capture of Ticonderoga. . . . .	120
21. Give an account of the Battle of Bunker's Hill. . . . .	121
22. Tell how the patriots were aroused throughout the country. . . .	122



	PAGE
23. How did the Americans prepare for war?	123
24. Tell about Washington and the Army.	123
25. Give an account of an expedition against Canada.	124
26. Tell about Arnold's wonderful march.	125
27. What can you tell about the siege of Quebec?	125
28. What occurred in Lower Virginia?	126
29. What can you tell about the words <i>Whig</i> and <i>Tory</i> ?	126
30. Give an account of Continental money.	127
31. What preparations were made for war by both parties?	128
32. Tell about Washington driving the British from Boston.	128
33. Give an account of the movements of Washington and Clinton.	129
34. Tell about the attack on Fort Moultrie.	129
35. What can you tell about preparations to form an independent nation?	130
36. What have you to say about the Declaration of Independence?	131
37. Give an account of military operations at and near New York.	132
38. Tell about the American Army leaving New York.	132
39. Give an account of the battle at White Plains.	133
40. Tell about the capture of Fort Washington, and life in prison ships.	133
41. What can you tell about Washington's operations on the Delaware?	134
42. What have you to say about the acts of Parliament and Congress?	135
43. Tell about Articles of Confederation, and events at Trenton.	136
44. Give an account of Washington's retreat and battle at Princeton.	137
45. Tell how the British were driven out of New Jersey, and operations there.	137
46. Give an account of marauding expeditions by Americans and British.	138
47. What measures did the British plan for subduing the Americans?	139
48. Tell about the operations of Generals Howe and Burgoyne.	139
49. What can you tell about Lafayette?	139
50. Tell about the Battle of Brandywine.	140
51. Give an account of operations near Philadelphia.	140
52. Tell about a battle at Germantown, and march to Valley Forge.	141
53. Tell about stirring events near Lake Champlain.	141
54. What can you tell of the movements of General Schuyler?	142
55. Tell about the Battle of Bennington, and the story of Jane McCrea.	142
56. What can you tell about important events in the Mohawk Valley?	143
57. Tell about the capture of Burgoyne and Forts Clinton and Montgomery.	144
58. What effects did these events produce?	144
59. What can you tell about the army at Valley Forge?	145
60. Give an account of the evacuation of Philadelphia by the British.	146
61. What can you tell about a battle in New Jersey?	146
62. Give an account of the movements of Washington after that battle.	147
63. What can you tell about efforts to drive the British from Rhode Island?	148
64. What did Tories and Indians do in Pennsylvania and New York?	148
65. What can you tell about a British army in the South?	149
66. What was the condition of the Americans at the beginning of 1779?	150
67. Can you give an account of operations in Georgia?	151
68. What can you tell of the British marching against Charleston?	151
69. Can you give an account of British marauding expeditions?	152
70. Tell about the capture of Stony Point and fort at Jersey City.	153
71. What can you tell about hostilities beyond the Alleghany Mountains?	154
72. Give an account of Sullivan's campaign against the Senecas.	154
73. What can you tell about a siege of Savannah?	154
74. What did Lafayette do in France, and what was the effect?	155
75. Can you give an account of some naval preparations?	156
76. Tell about some naval engagements on the ocean.	157
77. Tell about preparations for an attack on, and defense of, Charleston.	158
78. Can you give an account of the siege and capture of Charleston?	159
79. What can you tell about the renewal of war in South Carolina?	160
80. Can you give an account of a battle near Camden?	161
81. What did Cornwallis then do, and what occurred at King's Mountain?	161
82. What can you tell about partisan leaders?	162
83. Tell about operations in New Jersey, and a French fleet at Newport.	162
84. Can you give an account of Arnold's treason and its results?	163
85. What did the British do?	164
86. What have you to say about the American soldiers?	165
87. Can you give an account of Arnold's operations in Virginia?	166
88. What can you tell about General Greene in the South?	166
89. What can you tell about a battle at the Cowpens?	167
90. Can you tell about Cornwallis's famous pursuit of Morgan and Greene?	167

	PAGE
111. What can you tell about civil war in 1861 ? . . . . .	240
112. Tell about the war in 1862, at different points. . . . .	241
113. Give an account of the <i>Monitor</i> and <i>Merrimac</i> . . . . .	242
114. What order did the President give about the movements of armies ? . . . .	242
115. What great battle occurred in Tennessee ? . . . .	242
116. Give an account of the war on the Mississippi and elsewhere. . . . .	243
117. Tell about events at New Orleans and on the Virginia Peninsula. . . . .	243
118. Tell about the war near Washington, and in Maryland and Virginia. . . . .	244
119. Give an account of the war west of the Alleghany Mountains. . . . .	244
120. What further can you tell about the war west of the Alleghany ? . . . .	245
121. What did Congress and the President do concerning the slaves ? . . . .	245
122. Tell about the battles of Chancellorsville and Gettysburg. . . . .	246
123. What occurred in North Carolina and Southeastern Virginia ? . . . .	246
124. Tell about the siege of Charleston and movements in the Gulf Department. . . . .	247
125. Give an account of the capture of Vicksburg. . . . .	247
126. Tell about the battles of Chickamauga and Chattanooga. . . . .	248
127. What occurred in East Tennessee, Missouri and Arkansas ? . . . .	248
128. Give an account of Morgan's raid north of the Ohio River. . . . .	249
129. What have you to say about the work of the navy ? . . . .	249
130. Tell about movements from Vicksburg, and in Florida. . . . .	249
131. Give an account of an expedition up the Red River. . . . .	249
132. Tell about the operations of the Armies of the Potomac and the James. . . . .	250
133. What did General Sherman do in Georgia ? . . . .	250
134. What can you tell about pirate ships ? . . . .	251
135. Tell about the movements of Confederates in Virginia and Maryland. . . . .	251
136. What occurred near Mobile ? . . . .	251
137. Tell about events in the Shenandoah Valley and Tennessee. . . . .	252
138. Give an account of events in Middle Tennessee. . . . .	252
139. What can you tell about the capture of Fort Fisher and Wilmington ? . . . .	252
140. Give an account of Sherman's march through Georgia and the Carolinas. . . . .	253
141. Give an account of events at and near Petersburg and Richmond. . . . .	253
142. What have you to say about the closing operations of the war ? . . . .	254
143. What sad and important events occurred at Washington City ? . . . .	254
144. What have you to say about the seventeenth President of the Republic ? . . . .	254
145. What can you tell about Jefferson Davis ? . . . .	255
146. What was the condition of the country at the close of the war ? . . . .	255
147. What have you to say about the doings of Congress and the President ? . . . .	255
148. What can you tell about the impeachment of the President ? . . . .	256
149. What more have you to say about ocean telegraph cables ? . . . .	256
150. What can you tell about the growth of the Republic ? . . . .	256
151. What have you to say about the election of the eighteenth President ? . . . .	257

## THE CONSTITUTION.

1. Of what powers of Government does Article I. treat ? . . . .	258
2. State the contents of the several Sections. . . . .	258
3. Of what powers does Article II. treat ? . . . .	267
4. State the contents of the several Sections. . . . .	267
5. Of what powers does Article III. treat ? . . . .	270
6. State the contents of the several Sections. . . . .	270
7. Of what powers does Article IV. treat ? . . . .	272
8. State the contents of the several Sections. . . . .	272
9. Of what does Article V. treat ? . . . .	273
10. Of what does Article VI. treat ? . . . .	274
11. Of what does Article VII. treat ? . . . .	275
12. How many Amendments have been made to the Constitution ? . . . .	275
13. Of what do the several Amendments treat ? . . . .	275

# PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY

OF

## PROPER NAMES

IN THIS SERIES OF HISTORIES.

### A

Abenakes (*ah-ben'-e-kes*)  
 Abercrombie (*ab-er-krom'-be*)  
 Acadie (*ah-ka'-de-a*)  
 Acapulco (*ah-ka-pool'-ko*)  
 Agua Nueva (*ag'-wah-nwa'-vah*)  
 Aix-la-Chapelle (*āks-lah-shap'-el*)  
 Alabama (*ah-lah-bah'-mah*)  
 Albemarle (*ahl'-be-marl*)  
 Alleghany (*ah-le-gā'-ne*)  
 Alleghanies (*ah-le-gā'-nes*)  
 Algerine (*ahl'-je-reen'*)  
 Algonquin (*ahl'-gon'-kin*)  
 Altamaha (*ahl-tah-mah-haw')*  
 Amelia (*ah-meel'-yah*)  
 Amerigo Vespucci (*ah-mā-ree'-go  
ves-pool'-she*)  
 Amherst (*am'-erst*)  
 Ampudia (*am-poo'-dhee-ah*)  
 Amsterdam (*am'-ster-dam')*  
 Andastes (*an-dah'-stes')*  
 André (*on'-drā*)  
 Andalusia (*an-da-lu'-she-a*)  
 Annapolis (*an-nap'-o-lis*)  
 Antietam (*an-tee'-tam*)  
 Apaches (*ap-ah'-shes*)  
 Apallachee (*ap-al-lah'-chee*)  
 Apalachian (*ap-al-lah'-che-an*)  
 Appomattox (*ap-po-mat'-tox*)  
 Aquiday (*ah'-kwee-day*)  
 Arbuthnot (*ar-buth'-not*)  
 Argall (*ar'-gaul*)  
 Arista (*ah-rees'-tah*)  
 Arkansas (*ark'-an-saw*)  
 Arinada (*ar-mah'-da*)  
 Armistead (*ar'-mis-ted*)  
 Asia (*a'-she-a*)

Assinniboina (*ah-sin'-nē-boins*)  
 Attioudrious (*ah-ti-wond'-e-rons*)  
 Autossee (*ō'-tos-see*)  
 Axel (*avoks-el')*

### B

Bahamas (*bā-hā'-mahs*)  
 Bailey (*ba'-li*)  
 Bajador (*bah'-yad-or*)  
 Balfour (*bahl'-foor*)  
 Barbadoes (*bar-bā'-dōz*)  
 Barré (*bar'-ra*)  
 Baton Rouge (*bat'-un roozh*)  
 Baume (*bawm*)  
 Beaufort (*bo'-furt*)  
 Beauregard (*bo'-ra-gard*)  
 Beausejour (*to-seh'-jūre*)  
 Behring (*beer'-ing*)  
 Belle Isle (*bel-eel')*  
 Belgium (*bel'-ge-um*)  
 Bergen (*burg'-en*)  
 Berkeley (*burk'-ly*)  
 Berlin (*behr-leen')*  
 Bexar (*bā-har')*  
 Bingham (*tīng'-um*)  
 Boleyn (*bo-lain')*  
 Bonhomme Richard (*bon-om' ree'-rhard*)  
 Borgne (*born*)  
 Bordeaux (*bor-dō')*  
 Boquet (*bō-kā')*  
 Bracito (*brah-the'-to*)  
 Breyman (*bray'-mun*)  
 Buchanan (*buk-an'-an*)  
 Buena Vista (*bwe'-nah vees'-tah*)  
 Burgoyne (*bur-goin')*  
 Byllinge (*bil'-ling*)

## C

Calhoun (*kal-hoon'*)  
 California (*kal-i-for'-ni-a*)  
 Camanches (*ka-mon'-shes*)  
 Campbell (*kam' el*)  
 Canary (*kan-a'-re*)  
 Canonchet (*kan-on'-shet*)  
 Cape Breton (*kape brit'-t'n*)  
 Caramelli (*kar-a-mel'-le*)  
 Cardenas (*kar'-de-nas*)  
 Carlisle (*kar-lile'*)  
 Carnifex (*kar'-ne-fex*)  
 Carteret (*kar'-te-ret*)  
 Cartier (*kar-te-ay'*)  
 Casimer (*kas'-see-mer*)  
 Castile (*kas-teel'*)  
 Castine (*kas-teen'*)  
 Cerro Gordo (*thār'-ro gor'-do*)  
 Chambly (*sham'-ble*)  
 Chapultepec (*cha-pool'-te-pek*)  
 Chef Menteur (*shef-men'-terr'*)  
 Chemung (*she-mung'*)  
 Cherbourg (*sher'-bourg*)  
 Chesapeake (*ches'-a-peek*)  
 Chickahominy (*chick-a-hom'-i-ny*)  
 Chickamauga (*chik-a-maw'-gah*)  
 Chippewas (*chip'-pe-ways*)  
 Chihuahua (*chee-wah'-wah*)  
 Chrysler's (*kri-se'-lers*)  
 Churubusco (*choo-roo-boos'-ko*)  
 Chabon (*sha'-bong*)  
 Champlain (*sham-plain'*)  
 Chapultepec (*chah-pool'-ta-peck*)  
 Chattahoochee (*chat-tah-ooch'-ee*)  
 Chattanooga (*chat-tah-noo'-gah*)  
 Chandiere (*sho-de-ehr'*)  
 Chauncey (*chan'-ce*)  
 Coahuila (*ko-ah-weel'-ah*)  
 Cleopatra (*kle-o-pah'-tra*)  
 Coligny (*kō-leen'-ye*)  
 Combahee (*kom-ba-hee'*)  
 Congaree (*kong-a-ree'*)  
 Connecticut (*kon-net'-i-cut*)  
 Contreras (*kon-trā'-ras*)  
 Coosa (*koo'-sah*)  
 Cortez (*kor'-tez*)  
 Cortoreal (*kor-to-re-awl'*)  
 Cordilleras (*kor-dil'-yer-ras*)  
 Cordova (*kor'-do-rah*)  
 Corinth (*kor'-inth*)  
 Crimea (*kre-mee'-ah*)  
 Croghan (*kro'-un*)  
 Cuba (*koo'-bah*)  
 Cyane (*si an'*)

## D

Dacotah (*dah-ko'-tah*)  
 Dalton (*daw'-tun*)  
 Darien (*dah-re-en'*)  
 Dauphin (*do'-feen*)  
 D'Anville (*don-veel'*)  
 D'Ayllon (*dāile-yone'*)  
 Dearborn (*dehr'-burn*)  
 D'Estaing (*dehs-taing'*)  
 De Fleury (*deh flew'-ry*)

De Gourgès (*deh goorg'*)  
 De Grasse (*deh grass'*)  
 De Heister (*deh hī'-ster*)  
 De Kalb (*deh kalb'*)  
 De La Roque (*deh lah roke'*)  
 De Medici (*deh med'-e-chee*)  
 De Monts (*deh mong'*)  
 De Villiers (*deh ve-yā'*)  
 De Vries (*deh vreeze'*)  
 Dey of Algiers (*dā of al-jeers'*)  
 Diaz (*dee'-az*)  
 Diego (*dee-ā'-go*)  
 Dieskau (*dee-es-ko'*)  
 Donelson (*don'-el-sen*)  
 Doniphan (*don'-i-fun*)  
 Don Manuel de Monteano (*don man'-u-i*  
*deh mon-ta-ain'-yo*)  
 Douglas (*dug'-las*)  
 Downie (*down'-e*)  
 Duché (*du-shay'*)  
 Du Quesne (*du kane*)  
 Dupont (*du-pont'*)

## E

Edisto (*ed'-is-to*)  
 Elbe (*elb*)  
 Emucfau (*ē-muc-faw'*)  
 Erie (*ē'-ree*)  
 Esquimaux (*es-ki-mō'*)  
 E-stramadura (*es-trah-man-dā'-ra*)  
 Etchemins (*el'-che-meens*)  
 Ewing (*ū'-ing*)  
 Eyere (*ire*)

## F

Faulkner (*fawk'-ner*)  
 Faust (*fawst*)  
 Florida (*flor'-e-dah*)  
 Forbes (*forbz*)  
 Fouchet (*foo-shay'*)  
 Freelinghuysen (*free-ling-hi'-zen*)  
 Frémont (*fra-mont'*)  
 Frobisher (*frob'-ish-er*)  
 Frontenac (*front-e-nak'*)  
 Fulton (*fool'-tun*)

## G

Gabarus (*gab-ah'-rus*)  
 Galveston (*gal'-vest-un*)  
 Gaspé (*gas'-peh*)  
 Gaspercau (*gah-speh-ro'*)  
 Gauley (*gaw'-ly*)  
 Geary (*geer'-e*)  
 Genessee (*gen-e-see'*)  
 Genet (*je-net'*)  
 Genoeese (*jen-o-eez'*)  
 Gessler (*gess'-ler*)  
 Ghent (*gehnt*)  
 Girardeau (*jeer'-ar-dō*)  
 Gloucester (*glos'-ter*)  
 Goldsborough (*golds'-bur-rel*)  
 Gouverneur (*gouv'-ern-ehr*)  
 Graffenried (*grahf'-en-ride*)  
 Greble (*greh'-t'l*)



Grijalva (*gre-hahl'-rah*)  
Grinnell (*grin-nell'*)  
Guadaloupe Hidalgo (*gaw'-dah-loop*  
*he-dahl'-gō*)  
Guilford (*gūl'-furd*)  
Garrierre (*geh-ree-eh'r*)  
Gustavus Adolphus (*gust-ah'-vus*  
*a-dol'-us*)  
Guttenburg (*goo'-ten-behrg*)

H

Hackensack (*hak'-en-sak*)  
Havana (*hah-rah'-nah*)  
Haverhill (*hā-ver-il*)  
Havre-de-grace (*hav'-er-deh-grass'*)  
Hayne (*hāin*)  
Helena (*hel'-e-nah*)  
Hercules (*her'-cu-lehs*)  
Herrera (*er-rā'-rah*)  
Hesse Cassel (*hess cas'-sel*)  
Hessians (*hes'-she-ans*)  
Hillsboro' (*hiltz'-bur-reh*)  
Heys (*hāze*)  
Hochelaga (*hosh-e-lah'-gah*)  
Holbourn (*hōl'-boorn*)  
Horseneck (*horse'-nek*)  
Hotham (*hō'-thum*)  
Huguenots (*hug'-notts*)

I

Iberville (*i'-behr-vil*)  
Idaho (*I-dah'-o*)  
Illinois (*il-le-nois'*)  
Indies (*in'-diz*)  
Indians (*in'-de-ans*)  
Indiana (*in-de-an'-ah*)  
Iroquois (*ee-ro-kwah'*)  
Isle aux Noix (*eel ō noo'-ah*)  
Iuka (*i-u'-kah*)  
Izard (*iz'-zurd*)

J

Jalapa (*hah-lah-pah'*)  
Java (*jah'-rah*)  
Jeffreys (*jef'-fris*)  
Jesuit (*jehs'-vit*)  
Jesup (*jeh'-up*)  
Jumonville (*zhoo'-mong-veel*)

K

Kearsage (*keer'-sahrj*)  
Kearney (*kar'-ne*)  
Kennebeck (*ken-ne-bek'*)  
Kickapoos (*kik-a-poos'*)  
Kieft (*keeft*)  
Kittaning (*kit-tan'-ing*)  
Knisteneaux (*nis'-te-nō*)  
Knyphausen (*nip-how'-zen*)  
Kossuth (*kos-shool'*)

L

Laconia (*lah-ko'-ne-a*)  
Lafayette (*lah-fā-et'*)  
La Roche (*lah-rosh'*)  
Laudonnière (*law-don'-e-a*)  
La Vega (*lay ray'-goh*)  
Le Beuf (*leh buf'*)  
Lecompton (*leh-komp'-ton*)  
Leisler (*lise'-tur*)  
Leitch (*leech*)  
Le Moyne (*leh moin'*)  
Lenni-Lenape (*len'-ne len-ap'-pā*)  
Leon (*lā-on'*)  
Levi (*lee-vi'*)  
Leyden (*li'-den*)  
Lima (*lee'-mah*)  
Lincoln (*link'-un*)  
Longueuil (*long-ū-eel'*)  
Lopez (*lo'-peth*)  
Loudon (*loo'-dun*)  
Louisiana (*loo'-e-ze-ah'-na*)  
Lutzen (*loot'-zen*)

M

Macedonian (*mas-se-do'-ne-an*)  
Macomb (*mah-coom'*)  
McCullough (*mak kul'-lo*)  
McPherson (*mak fur'-sun*)  
Madeira (*ma-dee'-ra*)  
Mandans (*man'-dans*)  
Manitou (*man-e'-too*)  
Manteo (*man-te'-o*)  
Marchena (*mar-cha'-na*)  
Massasoit (*mas-sa-soit'*)  
Matamoras (*mat-a-mo'-rus*)  
Maumee (*maw-mee'*)  
Mauritius (*maw-rish-i-us*)  
Melendez (*ma-len'-deth*)  
Messilla (*mes-eel'-ya*)  
Miamies (*me-ah'-mees*)  
Micanopy (*me-kan'-o-pe*)  
Michigamis (*mish-e-gam'-ees*)  
Milan (*me-lan'*)  
Minetaree (*min-et-a-ree'*)  
Minnesota (*min-ne-so'-tah*)  
Missouri (*mis-soo'-re*)  
Mobile (*mo-beel'*)  
Monckton (*monk'-tun*)  
Monongahela (*mo-nong-a-hee'-lah*)  
Montcalm (*mont-kahm'*)  
Monterey (*mon-ta-ru'*)  
Montezuma (*mon-te-zoo'-ma*)  
Moultrie (*mool'-tre*)  
Muscogee (*musk-o-gee'*)

N

Nantes (*nants*)  
Narraganset (*nar-ra-gan'-set*)  
Narvaez (*nar'-vā-eth*)  
Nueces (*nwa'-ses*)  
Neuse (*nee-oos'*)  
Newport-Newce (*nu-p'rt noo-se'*)  
Nezperces (*na-per'-sas*)



Niagara (*ni-ag'-a-ra*)  
 Niantics (*ni-an'-tik*s)  
 Nipmucs (*nip'-mux*)  
 Nova Casarea (*no'-va see-zu-re'-a*)

O

Oglethorpe (*o-g'l'-thorp*)  
 Orleans (*or'-leens*)  
 Omaha (*om'-a-haw*)  
 Onondagas (*on-on-daw'-gahs*)  
 Ophir (*o'-fur*)  
 Osceola (*os'-se-o'-lah*)  
 Ottawas (*ot-tah'-wahs*)  
 Osark (*o-zark*)

P

Pacolet (*pak-o-let'*)  
 Palo Alto (*pah'-lo awl'-to*)  
 Pamlico (*pam'-lee-ko*)  
 Panuca (*pah-nu'-kah*)  
 Paoli (*pah-o'-le*)  
 Paredes (*pah-ra'-dehs*)  
 Pasqua de Flores (*pas'-koo-ah deh flo'-reh-i*)  
 Pavonia (*pah-vo'-ne-ah*)  
 Pemaquid (*pem'-a-kwid*)  
 Penobscot (*pe-nob'-scot*)  
 Pensacola (*pen-sa-ko'-lah*)  
 Pequod (*pee'-kwod*)  
 Piankeshaws (*pe-ank'-e-shaws*)  
 Pizarro (*pe-zah'-ro*)  
 Plymouth (*plim'-uth*)  
 Pocahontas (*po-ka-hon'-tus*)  
 Poitiers (*poi-teers'*)  
 Pocanokets (*po-ka-no'-kets*)  
 Pontiac (*pon-te-ak'*)  
 Popham (*pop'-um*)  
 Portsmouth (*portz'-muth*)  
 Potomac (*po-to'-mak*)  
 Powhatans (*pow-ha-tans'*)  
 Preble (*preb'-l*)  
 Puebla (*pweb'-lah*)  
 Pulaski (*pu-las'-ki*)

Q

Quaboag (*kwaw'-boge'*)  
 Quebec (*ke-bek'*)  
 Quinipiac (*kwini-ne-pe-ak'*)

R

Raleigh (*raw'-le*)  
 Rappahannock (*rap-a-han'-ok*)  
 Rehoboth (*re-ho'-buth*)  
 Reno (*ree'-no*)  
 Resaca de la Palma (*ra-sah-ka du la pal'-mah*)  
 Riall (*re'-awl*)  
 Ribault (*re'-bo*)  
 Rio Grande (*ri'-o grahd'*)  
 Rio de la Plata (*ri'-o da la plah'-tah*)  
 Roanoke (*ro-a-noke'*)  
 Roberval (*ro'-behr-val*)  
 Rolfe (*rolf*)  
 Rosecrans (*roze'-kranz*)  
 Ryswick (*riz'-wik*)

S

Saco (*saw'-ko*)  
 Sagadahock (*sah-gah-dah-hon')*  
 St. Castine (*sent kast-een')*  
 St. Malo (*sent mah'-lo*)  
 St. Pierre (*sent peer')*  
 Saltillo (*sawt-teel'-yo*)  
 San Juan d'Ulloa (*sahn hwan dah-oo-wo'-ah*)  
 San Luis Potosi (*sahn loo'-is po-to-see')*  
 Saratoga (*sah-rah-to'-gah*)  
 Sayle (*sale*)  
 Schenck (*skehnik*)  
 Schoepf (*spop*)  
 Seminole (*sem'-i-nole*)  
 Shawnoese (*shaw'-no-eez*)  
 Shiloh (*shy'-lo*)  
 Sigel (*see'-g'l*)  
 Sioux (*sooz*)  
 Stanwix (*stan'-ix*)  
 Stringham (*string'-um*)  
 Stuyvesant (*sty'-ve-sunt*)

T

Tacubaya (*tah-koo-bi'-a*)  
 Tallapoosa (*tal-lah-poo'-sah*)  
 Taney (*taw'-ne*)  
 Texel (*tex'-l*)  
 Thucydides (*thu-sid'-e-dez*)  
 Tripoli (*trip'-o-le*)  
 Tuscarroras (*tus-ka-ro'-ras*)

U

Usselincx (*oos-sel-links'*)  
 Utah (*u'-tah*)  
 Utrecht (*u'-trekt*)

V

Vera Cruz (*va-rah krooz'*)  
 Verrazzani (*va'-raz-zah'-ne*)

W

Wampanoags (*wawm-pah-no'-agz*)  
 Weehawken (*wee-hawk'-n*)  
 Weymouth (*wa'-muth*)  
 Wiltwyck (*will'-wik*)  
 Winder (*wine'-der*)  
 Wocoken (*wo-ko'-ken*)  
 Worden (*wur'-d'n*)

Y

Yamacraw (*yam-a-kraw')*  
 Yamassee (*yam-a-see')*  
 Yeardley (*yeerd'-le*)  
 Yucatan (*u-ka-tan')*

Z

Zenger (*zang'er*)  
 Zollcoffer (*zol-li-koj'-ur*)



**RETURN CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT**  
**TO → 202 Main Library**

LOAN PERIOD 1 <b>HOME USE</b>	2	3
4	5	6

**ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS**

**Renewals and Recharges may be made 4 days prior to the due date.**

**Books may be Renewed by calling 642-3405**

**DUE AS STAMPED BELOW**

**MAY 12 1994**

~~AUTO DISC CIRC~~ **MAY 12 '94**

**RECEIVED**

**MAY 12 1994**

**CIRCULATION DEPT.**

**SENT ON ILL**

**NOV 30 2000**

**U. C. BERKELEY**

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY  
BERKELEY, CA 94720

YB 37629

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C046773038

629471

E178

.1

L861

*Educ dept*

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

